OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 69

The Travels of Marco Polo

Marco Polo · Rustichello da Pisa

Le Livre de Marco Polo

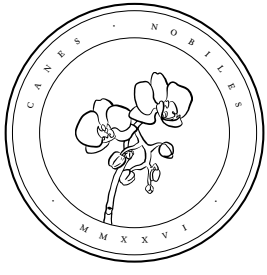
The Travels of Marco Polo

Part Two: Cathay, the Indies, and the Wars of the Tartars

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

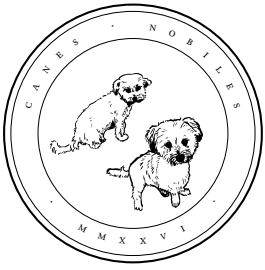


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 69 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows G. Pauthier's text of the French court redaction, Le Livre de Marco Polo, citoyen de Venise (Paris, 1865), chapters CV–CC

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text keeps Pauthier's spelling and accents. The margin gives his chapter numbers, and each chapter opens with its rubric; his chapters are grouped into the reading sections, whose English heads are this press's. A parenthesis in the text is his, most often his reading of a figure, set as he prints it, and a square bracket his supplement.

CONTENTS

I · Zhuozhou, Taiyuanfu, and the King of Gold 7
II · The King of Gold Humbled; Kenjanfu 13
III · Kunkun, Ak-balik Manzi, and Sindafu 19
IV · Tibet: Burning Canes and Its Marriages 26
V · Tibet and Caindu 33
VI · Carajan: Yachi and the Great Serpents 41
VII · Zardandan: Gold Teeth and the Enchanters 50
VIII · The Battle of Vochan 57
IX · The Elephants Routed 63
X · The Descent to Mien and Its Towers 67
XI · Bengal, Kaugigu, Aniu, and Toloman 73
XII · Kweichow and Its Lions; Cacanfu 79
XIII · Changlu, Tsinanfu, and Tondinfu 84
XIV · Singuy Matu and the Road to the Karamoran 89
XV · The Conquest of Manzi 96
XVI · Koiganju to Yangju 102
XVII · Nanghin, the Siege of Saianfu, and the Kiang 108

XVIII · Kwachau, Chinkianfu, and Chinginju 115
XIX · Suju and the Description of Quinsai 119
XX · The Revenues of Quinsai 133
XXI · Fuju and Zaiton 139
XXII · The Ships of India and the Isle of Cipangu 146
XXIII · The Stranded Army; the Idols and the Isles 153
XXIV · Champa and Java 161
XXV · The Lesser Java 165
XXVI · Necuveran, Angamanain, and Seilan 178
XXVII · Maabar, the Greater India 189
XXVIII · The Body of Saint Thomas 204
XXIX · Mutfili and Its Diamonds 208
XXX · Lar and the Abraiamans 213
XXXI · Cail and Coilum 219
XXXII · Comari, Eli, and Melibar 224
XXXIII · Gozurat, Tana, and Cambaet 230
XXXIV · Semenat, Kesmacoran, and the Isles of the Ocean 234
XXXV · Madagascar and the Rukh 241
XXXVI · Zanzibar and the Isles of India 246
XXXVII · Abash and the King's Revenge on Aden 251
XXXVIII · Aden and Esher 260
XXXIX · Dhofar, Kalhat, and Hormuz 265
XL · The Great Turkey and Kaidu's Wars 271
XLI · Kaidu's Daughter 280
XLII · Arghun Against Barac and Ahmad's Usurpation 287
XLIII · Ahmad's Speech and Arghun's Resolve 292

Thirty miles west of the bridge lies Zhuozhou, with its abbeys and silk weavers; a mile beyond, the road divides, west through Cathay and southeast toward Manzi. Ten days west through rich country lies Taiyuanfu, which makes harness for the Khan's host and has the only vines in Cathay; seven days more bring one to Pingyangfu. Then comes the castle of the King of Gold, whose hall portrays the kings of that country. The castle's people tell how seventeen youths of Prester John's court entered the King of Gold's service and, after two years, seized him on a ride.

Ci devise de la grant cité de Giugiu. 105

Here describes of the great city of Zhuozhou

Quant l'en se part de ce pont et l'en a chevauchie

When one himself departs from this bridge and one has ridden

trente milles par ponent, trouvant toutesvoies belles

thirty miles by west finding always fine

herbergeries pour les viandes et belles vingnes, et beaus

inns for the foods and fine vineyards and fine

jardins et beaus champs, et belles fontaines; adonc treuve

gardens and fine fields and fine fountains then finds

l'en une cité qui a nom Giugiu, grant et belle. Si y a

one a city which has name Zhuozhou great and fair So there are

maintes abbaies; et les genz y vivent de marchandise et

many abbeys and the people there live from merchandise and

d'art. Il labourent draps de soye et d'or et sendaus moult

from-craft They work cloths of silk and of-gold and sendals very

beaus. Et si y a maintes herbergeries pour les cheminans.

fine And so there are many inns for the travelers

Et quant l'en est parti de celle cité et en a chevauchie

And when one is departed from that city and thereof has ridden

une mille, si treuve l'en deux voies dont l'une vait à ponent,

a mile so finds one two ways of-which the-one goes to west

l'autre à sieloc. Celle du ponent est du Catay, et celle du
the-other to southeast That of-the west is of-the Cathay and that of-the
sieloc vait vers la province du Manzi. Et l'en chevauche
southeast goes toward the province of-the Manzi And one rides
dix journées vers ponent par la province du Catay, et
ten day-journeys toward west through the province of-the Cathay and
toutes fois trouvant cités et chasteaus et mains beaus casaus
all times finding cities and castles and many fine hamlets
de grans marcheandises et de grans ars, et beaus champs
of great merchandises and of great crafts and fine fields
et belles vingnes et privées genz. Mais pour ce qu'il n'y
and fine vineyards and friendly people But for this that-it not-there
a chose qui à conter face, ne vous en dirai ore riens.
is thing which to tell may-make not to-you thereof I-will-tell now anything
Si vous conterai d'un royaume qui Taianfu est appellez.
So to-you I-will-tell of-a kingdom which Taiyuanfu is called

106 Ci devise du royaume de Taianfu.
Here describes of-the kingdom of Taiyuanfu

Quant l'en a chevauchie ces dix journées partant de la cité
When one has ridden these ten day-journeys departing from the city
de Giugiu, si comme je vous ai dit, si se treuve l'en en un
of Zhuozhou so as I to-you have said so himself finds one in a
royaume qui est appelés Taianfu. Et est chief de la province,
kingdom which is called Taiyuanfu And it-is head of the province
cette cité où nous venismes, qui aussi a nom Taianfu, laquelle
this city where we came which also has name Taiyuanfu which
est moult grant cité et belle. Et si fait on grans marchandises
is very great city and fair And so makes one great merchandises
et grans ars; car en ceste cité se fait grant quantité de
and great crafts for in this city itself makes great quantity of
harnois qui ont grant besoing à l'ost du seigneur. Et y
harness which have great need at the-host of-the lord And there

a moult de vingnes moult belles, dequoy il ont vin à grant
are many of vineyards very fine from-which they have wine in great
habondance. Car en toute la province du Catay ne naist vin,
abundance For in all the province of-the Cathay not grows wine
fors que en celle seulement. [Et de ceste cité l'en va par
except that in that-one only And from this city one goes through
toute la province. Il ont encore grant quantité de soie, car
all the province They have further great quantity of silk for
il ont mouriers et vers qui la font en grant habondance.]
they have mulberries and worms which it make in great abundance

Et de ceste cité de Taianfu, si chevauche par ponent
And from this city of Taiyuanfu so one-rides by west
sept journées par moult belles contrées là où l'en treuve
seven day-journeys through very fine countries there where one finds
villes et chasteaus assez, où l'en fait grans marchandises
towns and castles plenty where one makes great merchandises
et pluseurs ars. Et issent de ceste contrée plusieurs grans
and several crafts And issue from this country several great
marchans qui vont en Ynde, et par autres païs, faisant
merchants who go into India and through other countries making
leur marcheandise et leur proufit. Et quant on a chevauchie
their merchandise and their profit And when one has ridden
ces sept journées adonc si treuve l'en une cité qui a nom
these seven day-journeys then so finds one a city which has name
Pianfu, qui moult est grant citez et de grant vaillance;
Pingyangfu which very is great city and of great worth
en laquelle a marchans assez qui vivent d'art et de
in which there-are merchants plenty who live from-craft and from
marchandise. Et si font soie en grant habondance.
merchandise And so they-make silk in great abundance

Or vous lairons de ce, et vous conterons d'une grant
Now you we-will-leave of this and to-you will-tell of-a great
cité qui a nom Cacianfu. Mais tout avant vous conterons
city which has name Hezhongfu But all before to-you we-will-tell
du noble chastel que l'en appelle Taïcin.
of-the noble castle which one calls Taicin

107 Ci dist du chastiau de Catay.
Here tells of-the castle of Cathay

Et quant l'en est parti de Pianfu, si chevauche l'en par
And when one is departed from Pingyangfu so rides one by
ponent deux journées; adonc treuve l'en le noble chasteau de
west two day-journeys then finds one the noble castle of
Catay, lequel fist faire jadis un roys de celle contrée, que l'en
Cathay which had made formerly a king of that country whom one
clamoit: «le roy d'Or», ouquel chastel a un moult grant
called the king of-Gold in-which castle there-is a very great
palais et bel. Et y a une grant sale où sont pourtrait
palace and fair And there is a great hall where are portrayed
touz les roys qui furent anciennement en celle province; et
all the kings who were anciently in that province and
est paint à or et de moult d'autre belle painture. Et
it-is painted with gold and with many of-other fine painting And
est moult belle chose a veoir. Et tout ce avoit fait faire
it-is very fine thing to see And all this had had made
chascun roy qui regnoit en celle province l'un apres l'autre.
each king who reigned in that province the-one after the-other

Or vous conterons une belle nouvelle qui avint entre
Now to-you we-will-tell a fine story which happened between
ce roy d'Or et Prestre Jehan, selonc ce que la gent
this king of-Gold and Prester John according-to that which the people
de celui chasteau racontent.
of that castle tell

Il fu voirs, selonc ce qu'il distrent, que celui roy
It was true according-to that which-they said that that king
d'Or ot guerre contre Prestre Jehan. Mais il estoit en si fort
of-Gold had war against Prester John But he was in so strong
lieu que Prestre Jehan ne povoit aler sus lui, ne lui nuire;
place that Prester John not could go upon him nor him harm
de quoi il avoit grant ire. Or avint que il s'assamblerent
of which he had great anger Now it-happened that they themselves-assembled
.xvij. vallez de la court Prestre Jehan, et li distrent
seventeen youths of the court (of-)Prester John and to-him said
que, se il vouloit, qu'il li apporteroient le roy d'Or
that if he wished that-they to-him would-bring the king of-Gold
tout vif. Et, il respondi qu'il le vouloit moult volentiers, et
all alive And he answered that-he it wished very willingly and
qu'il leur en saura moult grant gré, se il le font ainssi.
that-he to-them for-it will-know very great thanks if they it do thus

Et quant il orent le congie de Prestre Jehan leur seigneur si
And when they had the leave of Prester John their lord so
se partirent tuit ensamble à belle compaignie d'escuiers,
themselves departed all together with fair company of-squires
et s'en alerent à ce roy d'Or, et se presenterent
and themselves-thence went to this king of-Gold and themselves presented
à lui, et li distrent qu'il estoient à lui venuz d'estrange
to him and to-him said that-they were to him come from-foreign
païs pour lui servir. Et il leur respondi que il fussent les
country for him to-serve And he them answered that they were the
bien venuz, et que leur service li plaisoit moult bien comme
well come and that their service to-him pleased very well as
cilz qui n'y pensoient à nul mal. En telle maniere se
those who not-there thought of any evil In such manner themselves

mistrent, ces malvais valles, à servir le roy d'Or; et estoient de
put these wicked youths to serve the king of-Gold and were of
moult bons services, si que li roys les amoit et tenoit chiers.
very good services so that the king them loved and held dear

Quant il orent demouré entour ce roy pres de deux ans
When they had dwelt around this king near of two years
comme ceus qui ne pensoient à autre chose que à traïson,
as those who not thought of other thing than of treason
si alerent un jour avec le roy deduire, avec pou d'autres
so they-went one day with the king to-take-pleasure with few of-other
genz, comme ceus en qui le roy se fioit et les tenoit
people as those in whom the king himself trusted and them held
pres de lui. Et quant il orent passé un flun, qui estoit
near of him And when they had crossed a river which was
loings du chastel entour une mille, et se virent
far from-the castle about a mile and themselves saw
seuls avec le roy, si se distrent entr'eus que ore
alone with the king so themselves they-said between-themselves that now
estoit temps de faire ce pourquoi il estoient venuz là.
was time of doing that for-which they were come there
Si mistrent maintenant, touz, mains aus espées et distrent
So they-put at-once all hands to-the swords and said
au roy que il alast tout de maintenant avec eus, ou se
to-the king that he should-go all from at-once with them or if
ce non il l'occirroient. Quant le roy vit ce, si ot paour,
this not they him-would-kill When the king saw this so he-had fear
et moult se merveilla et leur dist: «Et comment, biaus
and much himself marveled and to-them said And how fair
filz, que est ce que vous dites? Et où voulez vous que
sons what is it that you say And where wish you that

je voise?» — Et il li respondirent et distrent: «Vous
I go And they to-him answered and said You
venrez, vueilliez ou non, jusques à nostre sire Prestre Jehan.»
will-come will-you or not as-far-as to our lord Prester John

II · THE KING OF GOLD HUMBLED; KENJANFU

The King of Gold begs for pity, but the youths bring him to Prester John, who sets him to keep cattle for two years and then asks whether he now sees that he could not stand against him. The king admits it, and Prester John sends him home honored, his man from then on. Beyond the great river Karamoran, too wide to bridge, lies Hezhongfu, and eight days farther west Kenjanfu, where the Khan's son Mangalai is king and keeps a marble-walled palace five miles around and rules justly.

Comment Prestre Jehan prist le roy d'Or. 108
How Prester John took the king of-Gold

Et quant le roy d'Or vit ce, si en ot si grant dueil que à
And when the king of-Gold saw this so thereof had so great grief that at
poi qu'il ne mouroit. Et lors dist: «Biaus filz! pour dieu, aiez
little that-he — died And then he-said Fair sons for God have
pitie et merci de moy. Et vous savez bien comment je vous ai
pity and mercy on me And you know well how I you have
honnourez, et chiers tenuz en mon hostel; et vous me voulez
honored and dear held in my house and you me wish
mettre es mains de mon ennemi! Certes se vous le faites,
to-put into-the hands of my enemy Certainly if you it do
vous ferez moult grant mal et grant desloiauté, et moult
you will-do very great evil and great disloyalty and very
grant vilennie.» — Et il li respondirent que il convenoit
great villainy And they to-him answered that it behooved
que ainssi fust. Si le menerent à leur seigneur Prestre Jehan.
that thus it-were So him they-led to their lord Prester John

Et quant Prestre Jehan le vit, si en ot moult grant joie,
And when Prester John him saw so thereof had very great joy
et lui dist que il feust le mal venuz. Le roi ne respondi mot,
and to-him said that he were the ill come The king not answered word
comme cilz qui ne savoit que il deust dire. Si commanda que
as one who not knew what he should say So he-commanded that
de maintenant fust prins et mis à garde dehors, que il li
from at-once he-were taken and put to keeping outside so-that they him
feissent garder bestes, et fust bien gardé. Si fu prins et mis
should-make keep beasts and were well guarded So he-was taken and put
à garder le bestial. Et ce li fist il faire par despit de lui, et
to keep the livestock And this to-him had he do in spite of him and
pour desprisier le; pour monstrer qu'il n'estoit neant contre lui.
for to-despise him for to-show that-he not-was anything against him
Et quant il ot ainssi gardé les bestes deus ans, si le
And when he had thus kept the beasts two years so him
fist venir devant lui, et li fist grant honneur, et le
he-had come before him and to-him did great honor and him
fist vestir de riches robes et li dist: «Sire roys, ore pues
had dressed in rich robes and to-him said Lord king now canst
tu veoir bien que tu n'estoies mie homme qui contre moy
thou see well that thou not-wast at-all man who against me
peusses contrester?» — «Certes biau Sire! je congnois bien et
couldst withstand Certainly fair Lord I know well and
congnoissoie toute fois que je n'estoie pas homme de contrester
knew all times that I not-was at-all man to withstand
à vous.» Et quant il ot ce dit, si dist Prestre Jehan: «Je ne
to you And when he had this said so said Prester John I not
te demande autre chose; mais desormais te feray servir
thee ask other thing but henceforth thee I-will-have served
et honnourer.» — Et li fist donner chevaus et hernois
and honored And to-him he-had given horses and harness

et belle compaignie et le renvoya en son païs. Et depuis
and fair company and him sent-back into his country And since
en avant fu son ami et tint à seigneur Prestre Jehan.
on forward he-was his friend and held for lord Prester John

Or vous lairons de ceste aventure qui avint au roy
Now you we-will-leave of this adventure which happened to-the king
d'Or; et vous dirons d'autre pour suivre notre matiere.
of-Gold and to-you will-tell of-other for to-follow our matter

Ci dist du grant flun de Caramoram et de la grant 109
Here tells of-the great river of Karamoran and of the great
cité de Cacianfu.
city of Hezhongfu

Et quant l'en est parti de ce chastel et chevauchie entour
And when one is departed from this castle and ridden about
.xx. milles par ponent, adonc si treuve l'en un flun qui a
twenty miles by west then so finds one a river which has
nom Caramoram, qui est si grant que l'en ne le puet passer
name Karamoran which is so great that one not it can cross
par pont; car il est moult large et moult parfont et va
by bridge for it is very wide and very deep and goes
jusques à la grant mer ocianne, qui avironne le monde; c'est
as-far-as to the great sea ocean which surrounds the world that-is
à dire: la terre toute. Et sus cel flun a pluseurs citez et
to say the earth all And upon that river there-are several cities and
chasteaus où il a pluseurs marchans. Car, sus ce flun,
castles where it there-are several merchants For upon this river
se fait moult de marchandise pour ce que en la contrée
itself makes much of merchandise for this that in the country
a gingembre assez, et soie en grant habondance. Il y
there-is ginger plenty and silk in great abundance It there
a si grant multitude d'oiseaux que c'est merveilles; l'en y
is so great multitude of-birds that it-is marvels one there

auroit bien trois fesans pour un gros venesien d'argent. Et
would-have fully three pheasants for a groat Venetian of-silver And
quant l'en a passé ce flun, et l'en chevauche deux journées
when one has crossed this river and one rides two day-journeys
par ponent, adonc si treuve l'en la noble cité devant dite de
by west then so finds one the noble city before said of
Cacianfu. Les genz sont touz ydres. Et encor vous di que
Hezhongfu The people are all idolaters And further to-you I-tell that
vous devez savoir que tuit cil de la province du Catay sont
you must know that all those of the province of-the Cathay are
tretouz ydolatres. Et est cité de moult grant marchandise et
altogether idolaters And it-is city of very great merchandise and
de moult de manieres d'ars à or, et toutes autres façons.
of many of manners of-crafts with gold and all other fashions

Autre chose n'y a qui à ramentevoir face; et pour
Other thing not-there is which to mention may-make and for
ce irons plus avant, et parlerons d'une noble cité qui
this we-will-go more forward and will-speak of-a noble city which
est chief du regne et qui a nom Quengianfu.
is head of-the realm and which has name Kenjanfu

110 Ci dist de la cité de Quengianfu.
Here tells of the city of Kenjanfu

Et quant l'en se part de la cité de Cacianf(u) que
And when one himself departs from the city of Hezhongfu which
dit vous ay deseure, se l'en chevauche huit journées par
said to-you I-have above so one rides eight day-journeys by
ponent, l'en treuve citez et chasteaux où il a assez
west one finds cities and castles where it there-are plenty
de marchandises et de grans ars et mains beaux arbres et
of merchandises and of great crafts and many fine trees and
jardins et beaux champs touz plains de mouriers: ce sont
gardens and fine fields all full of mulberries these are

les arbres de quoy vivent des feuilles les vers qui font
the trees from which live of-the leaves the worms which make
la soie. Les genz sont tuit idolastres. Il y a chaçoison
the silk The people are all idolaters It there is hunting
et ozeloison assez de toutes manieres.
and fowling plenty of all manners

Et quant l'en a chevauchie ces huit journées que je vous
And when one has ridden these eight day-journeys which I to-you
ai dit, adonc si treuve l'en ceste grant cité que je vous
have said then so finds one this great city which I to-you
ai dit, de Quengianfu, qui est moult grant et belle; et
have said of Kenjanfu which is very great and fair and
est chief du royaume de Quengianfu, qui anciennement fut
is head of-the kingdom of Kenjanfu which anciently was
noble royaumes et riches et grans; qui jadis ot pluseurs
noble kingdom and rich and great which formerly had several
grans roys riches et vaillans; mais orendroit est roys un sires,
great kings rich and valiant but now is king a lord
le filz au grant Kaan, qui Manglay est appellez; car il li
the son of-the great Khan who Mangalai is called for he to-him
a donné ce royaume et l'en a couronné à roy. Elle
has given this kingdom and him-thereof has crowned for king It
est cité de grant marchandise et de grant ars. Il ont soie
is city of great merchandise and of great crafts They have silk
à moult grant habondance dont il labourent draps de soie
in very great abundance of-which they work cloths of silk
et à or de plusieurs manieres; et aussi y labeure l'en
and with gold of several manners and also there works one
tout hernois qui à ost appartient. Il ont toutes choses qui
all harness which to host belongs They have all things which
a corps d'homme besoingne pour vivre et grant marchie. La
to body of-man is-needful for to-live and great market The

ville est à ponent, et sont idolastres; et dehors la ville est
town is to west and they-are idolaters and outside the town is
le palais du seigneur qui est Manglay appellez, si comme
the palace of-the lord who is Mangalai called so as
je vous ai dit dessus, qui roys est couronnez, filz du grant
I to-you have said above who king is crowned son of-the great
Kaan. Il est si biaus (le palais) et est si grant comme je
Khan It is so fair the palace and is so great as I
vous dirai. Il est en un grant plain là où il a fluns
to-you will-tell It is in a great plain there where it there-are rivers
et lacs et fontaines assez. Il a tout entour un mur moult
and lakes and fountains plenty It has all around a wall very
gros et moult haut qui dure environ cinq milles, tout
thick and very high which lasts about five miles all
marbres et bien fait. Et enmi ce mur est le palais du
marbles and well made And amid this wall is the palace of-the
roy si grant et si biau que nus ne le sauroit miex deviser.
king so great and so fair that anyone not it could better describe
Il y a maintes belles sales et grandes, et maintes belles
It there is many fine halls and great and many fine
chambres toutes pourtraites et paintes à or batu. Cel
chambers all portrayed and painted with gold beaten This
Monglay maintient moult bien son royaume en grant justice
Mangalai maintains very well his kingdom in great justice
et en grant droit, et est moult amez de sa gent. Les osts
and in great right and is much loved by his people The hosts
demeurent environ le palais et y ont soulaz de venoison.
dwell around the palace and there have solace of venison

Atant nous partirons de ce royaume, et nous conterons
At-that we will-depart from this kingdom and we will-tell
d'une province qui est moult en montaignes, qui est
of-a province which is much in mountains which is
appellée Cuncun, qui est moult ennuieuse voie à cheminer.
called Kunkun which is very wearisome way to travel

III · KUNKUN, AK-BALIK MANZI, AND SINDAFU

Three days west of Mangalai's palace begin the mountains and valleys of Kunkun, full of lions, bears, and lynxes, crossed for twenty days by towns and inns. Then comes the plain of Ak-balik Manzi, so rich in ginger that it supplies all Cathay, and twenty more days of mountains with musk deer. Sindafu, once three kingdoms walled within one city, lies on the Kiang-sui, a river so crowded with ships and so wide that it seems a sea; its covered bridge of stone, lined with booths, yields the Khan a thousand weights of gold a day.

Ci dit de la province de Cuncun qui est moult ennuieuse 111
Here tells of the province of Kunkun which is very wearisome
à cheminer.
to travel

Quant l'en se part de cel palais de Monglai, que je
When one himself departs from that palace of Mangalai which I
vous ai dit, si chevauche l'en par ponent trois journées toute
to-you have said so rides one by west three day-journeys all
fois trouvant villes et chasteaux et beaux plains assez; et
times finding towns and castles and fine plains plenty and
sont hommes qui vivent de marchandise et d'art, et ont
they-are men who live from merchandise and from-craft and have
soie en grant habondance. Et au chief de ces trois journées
silk in great abundance And at-the end of these three day-journeys

si treuve l'en les grans montaignes et les grans vallées qui
so finds one the great mountains and the great valleys which
sont de la province de Cuncun. Il y a cités et chasteaux
are of the province of Kunkun It there is cities and castles
et sont idolastres, et vivent du labour de terre et des
and they-are idolaters and live from-the labor of land and from-the
venoisons des grans bois; car il y a boscages assez où
venisons of-the great woods for it there is groves plenty where
l'en treuve moult de fieres bestes; si comme lyons, ours, lous
one finds many of fierce beasts so as lions bears wolves
cerviers et d'autres manieres de bestes assez; si que moult
lynx-kind and of-other manners of beasts plenty so that many
en prennent les genz de la contrée et en ont grans profiz.
thereof take the people of the country and thereof have great profits
En ceste maniere chevauche l'en par mons et par vaus
In this manner rides one through mounts and through vales
toutes fois trouvant cités et chasteaux assez, et de grans
all times finding cities and castles plenty and of great
boscages, et moult de grans herbergeries aus cheminans.
groves and many of great inns for-the travelers

Or nous partirons de ceste province, et nous conterons
Now we will-depart from this province and we will-tell
d'une autre contrée, si comme vous pourrez oïr ci dessouz.
of-an other country so as you will-be-able hear here below

112 Ci dist de la province de Achalec Manzi qui est moult
Here tells of the province of Ak-balik Manzi which is very
grant.
great

Et quant en a chevauchie les .xx. journées des
And when one has ridden the twenty day-journeys of-the
montaignes de Cuncun que je vous ai dit dessus, adonc
mountains of Kunkun which I to-you have said above then

treuve l'en une province qui a nom Acbalec Manzi, qui
finds one a province which has name Ak-balik Manzi which
est toute plaine. Il y a citez et chasteaux assez; et sont
is all plain It there is cities and castles plenty and they-are
au grant Kaan. Les genz sont idolastres et vivent de
of-the great Khan The people are idolaters and live from
marchandises et d'ars. Et si vous di que en ceste province
merchandises and from-crafts And so to-you I-tell that in this province
croist si grant quantité de gingembre que il s'espant par
grows so great quantity of ginger that it itself-spreads through
toute la province du Catay. Et en vivent les hommes de
all the province of-the Cathay And thereof live the men of
ceste province; grant profit et grans biens viennent de lui.
this province great profit and great goods come from it
Il ont froument et ris et autres blés à grant planté et à
They have wheat and rice and other grains in great plenty and at
bon marchie; et moult est planteureuse terre de touz biens.
good market and very is plentiful land of all goods
La maistre cité est appellée Acmalec. Ceste plaine dure deux
The master city is called Ak-balik This plain lasts two
journées, si belles comme je vous ai dit, avec tant villes et
day-journeys so fair as I to-you have said with so-many towns and
chasteaus. Et au chief de ces deux journées adonc si treuve
castles And at-the end of these two day-journeys then so finds
l'en grans mons et grans vaus et de grans bois assez; et
one great mounts and great vales and of great woods plenty and
chevauche l'en parmi celle voie bien vingt journées par ponent
rides one through that way fully twenty day-journeys by west
trouvant villes et chasteaus assez. Les genz sont idolastres et
finding towns and castles plenty The people are idolaters and
vivent du proufit de la terre, et des bestaus et des
live from-the profit of the earth and from-the livestock and from-the

sauvagines et des venoisons dont il y a moult. Et y a
wild-game and from-the venisons of-which it there is much And there is
moult grant quantité de telles bestes qui font le musgueliat.
very great quantity of such beasts which make the musk

Or nous partirons de ci, et vous conterons des autres,
Now we will-depart from here and to-you will-tell of-the others
bien et ordeneement, si comme vous pourrez oïr.
well and orderly so as you will-be-able hear

113 Ci dist de la province de Sardansu.
Here tells of the province of Sindafu

Quant l'en a chevauchie ces .xx. journées des montaignes
When one has ridden these twenty day-journeys of-the mountains
que je vous ai dit deseure par ponent, adonc si treuve l'en
which I to-you have said above by west then so finds one
un plain qui est d'une province que l'en appelle Sardansu, et
a plain which is of-a province which one calls Sindafu and
la maistre cité Syndifu, qui est voisine au costé de Manzi,
the master city Sindafu which is neighbor to-the side of Manzi
laquelle cité fu jadis grant et noble; et moult y ot là
which city was formerly great and noble and many there were there
grans roys et riches. Elle dure bien environ .xx. milles;
great kings and rich It lasts fully about twenty miles
mais elle est devisée en telle maniere comme je vous dirai.
but it is divided in such manner as I to-you will-tell

Il fut voirs que le Roy de celle province, jadis quant il
It was true that the King of that province formerly when he
vint a mort, si laissa trois filz et commanda que la cité fust
came to death so left three sons and commanded that the city were
partie en trois, ainssi que chascun de ses troiz fils eust sa
divided in three so that each of his three sons should-have his
part. Et chascune de ces trois pars est partie, et est murée
part And each of these three parts is divided and is walled

entour; mais toutes trois sont dedens les murs de la grant cité.
around but all three are within the walls of the great city
Et furent tuit trois les siens filz, chascun roy par soy, car
And were all three the his sons each king by himself for
chascun avoit sa cité de part, et la part de son royaume; si
each had his city of part and the part of his kingdom so
que chascun par soi en estoit grant roy et riches. Le grant
that each by himself thereof was great king and rich The great
Kaan prinst le royaume de ces trois roys et les desherita.
Khan took the kingdom of these three kings and them disinherited

Et parmi ceste grant cité court un grant flun ouquel l'en
And through this great city runs a great river in-which one
prent moult de poisson. Il est large bien demie mille et est
takes many of fish It is wide fully half mile and is
moult parfont, et si lonc que il va jusques à la mer occeane.
very deep and so long that it goes as-far-as to the sea ocean
Mais il y a moult lonc chemin de .lxxx. journées ou de
But it there is very long road of eighty day-journeys or of
.c. et est appellez Quiansuy. Il y a sus ce flun si grant
a-hundred and it-is called Kiang-sui It there is upon this river so great
quantité de navie qu'il n'est nul qui ne le veist, et l'oïst
quantity of shipping that-there not-is anyone who not it saw and it-heard
conter, qui le peust croire. Et est si grant la multitude de
tell who it could believe And it-is so great the multitude of
la grant marchandise que les marchans portent sus et jus
the great merchandise which the merchants carry up and down
par ce flun, qu'il n'est homme ou monde qui le peust
by this river that-there not-is man in-the world who it could
croire. Il ne semble pas flun, mais mer, tant est large.
believe It not seems at-all river but sea so-much it-is wide

Et nous dirons d'un grant flun et d'un pont grant qui
And we will-tell of-a great river and of-a bridge great which
est dessus ce flun en la ville. Sus ce flun le pont est de
is upon this river in the town Upon this river the bridge is of
pierres, large de .viij. pas et lonc demie mille, si comme je
stones wide of eight paces and long half mile so as I
vous ai dit que le pont est large; de lonc en lonc du
to-you have said that the bridge is wide from long to long of-the
pont [d'une part et d'autres, si y a coulombes de marbre,
bridge on-one part and on-others so there are columns of marble
lesquelles coulombes soustiennent la couverture du pont;] car
which columns sustain the roof of-the bridge for
il est tout couvert d'un chief à l'autre moult bien et de
it is all covered from-one end to the-other very well and with
moult couverture de lingnain; et est toute painte a moult
much roofing of wood and it-is all painted with very
riche painture. Et sus ce pont a moult de maisons,
rich painting And upon this bridge there-are many of houses
esquelles se font grans marchandises et ars assez. Mais
in-which themselves make great merchandises and crafts plenty But
ces maisons sont toutes de fust que l'en met au matin
these houses are all of wood which one puts in-the morning
et oste au soir. Encore a sus ce pont le couvert
and removes at-the evening Further there-is upon this bridge the custom-house
du grant Kaan ouquel le droit et la rente du seigneur
of-the great Khan in-which the right and the revenue of-the lord
est receue. Et vous di que le droit de ce pont vaut bien
is received And to-you I-tell that the right of this bridge is-worth fully
au seigneur mil pois de fin or chascun jour et plus.
to-the lord thousand weights of fine gold each day and more

Les genz sont touz idolastres; et de ceste cité l'en
The people are all idolaters and from this city one
se part et chevauche l'en cinq journées [par plains
himself departs and rides one five day-journeys through plains
et treuve l'en chasteaulx et citez assez. Encore font
and finds one castles and cities plenty Further they-make
plusieurs manieres de dras de soye. Les hommes vivent
several manners of cloths of silk The men live
du prouffit de la terre. Il y a sauvagines assez, lyons
from-the profit of the earth It there is wild-game plenty lions
et ours et autres bestes sauvages assez. Ilz font de moult
and bears and other beasts wild plenty They make of very
beaulx cendaulz assez. Et quant l'en a chevauchie ces cinq
fine sendals plenty And when one has ridden these five
journées] adonc si treuve l'en une province moult gastée
day-journeys then so finds one a province very wasted
que l'en appelle Tebet, de laquelle nous dirons ci dessous.
which one calls Tibet of which we will-tell here below

IV · TIBET: BURNING CANES AND ITS MARRIAGES

Five days on, Tibet lies wasted by Möngke Khan's war, its towns thrown down and full of wild beasts. Travelers burn green canes at night, whose bursts are so loud that lions and bears flee and horses must be hobbled and blindfolded. After twenty days without a dwelling come towns where no man will marry a maiden: old women bring their daughters to passing strangers, and a girl must collect more than twenty tokens before she can wed, the more the better. Once married, wives are held dear. The people are idolaters and thieves who hunt musk deer and use salt for money.

114 Ci dist de la province de Tebet.

Here tells of the province of Tibet

Et apres les .v. journées que je vous ai dit, adonc entre

And after the five day-journeys which I to-you have said then enters

l'en en une forest qui est moult grant, qui est en la province

one into a forest which is very great which is in the province

de Tebet; car Mongu kaan l'a destruit par guerre. Il y

of Tibet for Möngke Khan it-has destroyed by war It there

a citez et chasteaux et causaus tuit desrochie et gasté; et

is cities and castles and hamlets all thrown-down and wasted and

si treuve l'en canes moult, grosses trois paumes, et longues

so finds one canes many thick three palms and long

bien quinze pas. Et ont de l'un neu à l'autre plus de

fully fifteen paces And they-have from the-one knot to the-other more than

trois paumes. Et si vous di que les marchans et autres

three palms And so to-you I-tell that the merchants and other

genz qui cheminent par celle terre, la nuit, il prennent

people who travel through that land the night they take

de ces canes et en font feu, pour ce que, quant elles sont

of these canes and thereof make fire for this that when they are

au feu, elles font si grans escrois que les lyons et les ours

in-the fire they make so great cracks that the lions and the bears

et les autres bestes sauvages en ont si grant paour que
and the other beasts wild thereof have so great fear that
il fuient tant comme il pevent, et n'aprocheroient au
they flee as-much as they can and not-would-approach to-the
feu pour riens du monde. Et ce feu font il pour garantir
fire for anything of-the world And this fire make they for to-protect
eulx et leurs bestes, des fieres bestes sauvages que tant
themselves and their beasts from-the fierce beasts wild for so-many
en y a par celle gasté province. Et c'est pour ce qu'il
thereof there are through that wasted province And this-is for this that-it
n'y habite nulle gent, pour ce sont tant mouteplies ces
not-there dwells any people for this are so-much multiplied these
bestes sauvaiges. Et se ne fussent ces canes qui font si grans
beasts wild And if not were these canes which make so great
escrois à ardoir, que les bestes fuient et en ont si grant
cracks in burning so-that the beasts flee and thereof have so great
paour, que ce ne fust ce, nul ne porroit par là passer.
fear that this not were this anyone not could by there pass

Et vous conterons comment ces canes font grant escrois.
And to-you we-will-tell how these canes make great cracks
Il prennent de ces canes vers, que moult en y a, et
They take of these canes green for many thereof there are and
les mettent pluseurs ou feu ensemble. Et quant il sont
them put several in-the fire together And when they are
bien demouré une piece, si s'ecorse et se fent par mi
well remained a while so itself-splits and itself cleaves through middle
et fait si grans escrois que l'en les ot bien par nuit,
and makes so great cracks that one them hears well by night
de .x. milles. Et sachiez s'aucun ne fust acoustumé d'oïr
from ten miles And know if-someone not were accustomed of-hearing
les, il pourroit, de legier, perdre le sens, ou mourir. Mais
them he could with ease lose the sense or die But

ceus qui l'ont acoustumé d'oïr les, n'en font force
those who it-have accustomed of-hearing them not-thereof make force
pour ce qu'il ont acoustumé d'oïr. Et ceus qui ne l'ont
for this that-they have accustomed of-hearing And those who not it-have
acoustumé, si leur convient prendre coton et farcir bien
accustomed so to-them it-behooves take cotton and stuff well
leurs oreilles, et puis bien bender leur teste et leur chiere
their ears and then well bind their head and their face
et couvrir la de toutes les robes que l'en a. Ainsi eschappe
and cover it with all the robes which one has Thus escapes
l'en au premier jusques à tant que l'en l'a acoustumé.
one at-the first until to such-time that one it-has accustomed
Et ainsi vous di des chevaus qui y sont. Ces bestes
And thus to-you I-tell of-the horses which there are These beasts
qui ne sont acoustumé de ce oïr, quant il l'oent, si
which not are accustomed of this to-hear when they it-hear so
rompent chevestres et autres choses; et pluseurs en ont
they-break halters and other things and several thereof have
ja perdu leur bestes en ceste manière. Mais quant il
already lost their beasts in this manner But when they
veulent ainsi eschaper leur bestes, si leur font bien leirer
wish thus to-save their beasts so to-them they-make well tie
et enchevestrer les quatre piez, et puis bien bender la
and halter the four feet and then well bind the
teste, les iex et les oreilles; et en telle maniere eschappent.
head the eyes and the ears and in such manner they-escape
Mais les chevax quant il ont oy pluseurs fois, il ne font
But the horses when they have heard several times they not make
pas si grant force. Car je vous di que c'est la plus orrible
at-all so great force For I to-you tell that it-is the most horrible
chose à oïr, la premiere fois, qui soit ou monde. Et
thing to hear the first time which be in-the world And

avec tout ce, aucune fois vient il des lyons, et des ours,
with all this some time comes there of-the lions and of-the bears
et des autres bestes sauvages, et leur font grant domage;
and of-the other beasts wild and to-them do great damage
car moult en y a à grant foison par le païs.
for many thereof there are in great plenty through the country

Et quant on a chevauchie vingt journées, non trouvant
And when one has ridden twenty day-journeys not finding
habitation nulle, si que il convient aus cheminans porter
habitation any so that it behooves to-the travelers carry
toute leur vitaille, et trouvant toute fois moult de ces bestes
all their victuals and finding all times many of these beasts
sauvages qui sont moult perilleuses et pesmes à douter, adonc
wild which are very perilous and evil to fear then
si treuve l'en chasteaus et villes assez. Et ont la gent de
so finds one castles and towns plenty And have the people of
ces villes une telle coustume de marier comme je vous dirai.
these towns a such custom of marrying as I to-you will-tell

Nul homme de celle contrée pour riens du monde ne
Any man of that country for anything of-the world not
prendroit à femme une garce pucelle; et dient que elles ne
would-take to wife a girl maiden and they-say that they not
vallent riens, se elles ne sont usées et coustumées de gesir
are-worth anything if they not are used and accustomed of lying
avec les hommes. Et font en tel maniere que quant les
with the men And they-do in such manner that when the
cheminans passent, si sont appareilliées, les vielles femmes,
travelers pass so are made-ready the old women
avec leurs filles ou leurs parentes, et vont avec ces garces
with their daughters or their kinswomen and go with these girls
pucelles et les mainnent aus genz estranges, qui par là
maidens and them lead to-the people foreign who by there

passent, et les donnent à chascun qui en veult prendre
pass and them give to each who thereof wishes to-take
pour faire en leur volenté. Et les hommes en prennent,
for to-do in their will And the men thereof take
et en font ce qu'il veulent. Et puis les rendent à ces
and thereof do that which-they wish And then them they-render to these
vielles qui leur ont menées, car il ne les laissent pas aler
old-women who them have led for they not them let at-all go
avec la gent. Et en ceste maniere treuvent, les cheminans,
with the people And in this manner find the travelers
quant il vont par les voies, à vingt ou à trente tant que
when they go along the ways by twenty or by thirty as-many that
il veulent; c'est quant il passent par devant un casal ou un
they wish this-is when they pass by before a hamlet or a
chastel, ou une autre habitation. Et quant il herbergent avec
castle or an other habitation And when they lodge with
ceste gent en leur casaus, si en ont aussi tant comme il
this people in their hamlets so thereof have also as-many as they
veullent, qui les viennent prier. Bien est voir que il convient
wish who them come beg Well is true that it behooves
que vous donnez à celle avec qui vous aurez geu, un
that you give to her with whom you will-have lain a
anelet, ou aucune petite chosete, ou aucunes enseignes qu'elle
little-ring or some little trinket or some tokens which-she
puisse monstrer quant elle se voudra marier, qu'elle a eu
may show when she herself will-wish to-marry that-she has had
plusieurs hommes. Et ne le font pour autre chose. En telle
several men And not it they-do for other thing In such
maniere convient, à chascune pucelle, pourchacier plus de
manner it-behooves to each maiden to-procure more than
vingt icex seignaus avant qu'elle se puisse marier, par la
twenty such tokens before that-she herself may marry by the

voie que je vous ai dit. Celles qui plus ont de seignaus,
way which I to-you have said Those who most have of tokens
et qui plus auront monstré qu'elles auront esté le plus
and who most will-have shown that-they will-have been the most
touchiées, si sont pour meilleurs tenues. Et plus volentiers
touched so they-are for better held And more willingly
l'espousent, pour ce qu'il dient qu'elle est plus gracieuse.
her-they-wed for this that-they say that-she is more gracious
Mais quant elles sont mariées, si les tiennent trop chieres,
But when they are married so them they-hold very dear
et ont pour trop grant vilonnie se l'un touchast la femme
and have for very great villainy if the-one touched the wife
à l'autre; et se gardent moult de ceste honte tretuit,
of the-other and themselves guard much from this shame all-together
depuis qu'il se seront mariés avec si faites femmes.
since that-they themselves will-be married with so made women

Or vous ai conté de cest mariage, qui bien fait à
Now to-you I-have told of this marriage which well is-fit to
conter et à dire; car bien y devroient aler les jeunes
tell and to say for well there ought go the young
bachelers pour avoir de ces pucelles à leur vouloir tant
bachelors for to-have of these maidens at their will as-many
comme il demanderoient, et seroient priez sanz nul coust.
as they would-ask and would-be begged without any cost

Les genz sont idolastres et mauvaises durement, et ne
The people are idolaters and wicked grievously and not
tiennent à nul pechie rober ne mal faire, et greigneurs
hold for any sin robbing nor evil doing and greatest
escharnisseurs du monde. Il vivent de chace et de
mockers of-the world They live from hunting and from
venoison et de bestail et de fruit que il traient de la
venison and from livestock and from fruit which they draw from the

terre. Si vous di encore que en ceste contrée, ont moult de
earth So to-you I-tell further that in this country they-have many of
bestes qui font le muguelias, et l'appellent en leur language
beasts which make the musk and it-call in their language
guduri. Et ont, ces males gens, moult de grans chiens et
gudderi And have these evil people many of great dogs and
de bons qui prennent moult de ces bestialles. Si que pour
of good-ones which take many of these beasts So that for
ce, il en ont, du muguelias, en grant habondance. Il
this they thereof have of-the musk in great abundance They
n'ont pas monnoie de chartretes, de celle du grant Kaan;
not-have at-all money of little-charters of that of-the great Khan
mais font monnoie de sel. Il sont vestus moult pourement,
but make money of salt They are dressed very poorly
car il ne sont vestus que de peaus de bestes et de
for they not are dressed but in skins of beasts and in
chanevoz et de bouguerans; et ont langage par euls, et
hemp-cloth and in buckram and have language by themselves and
s'appellent Tebet. Et cest Tebet est une grandisme province
themselves-call Tibet And this Tibet is a very-great province
que encore vous en dirai, si comme vous pourrez oïr.
of-which further to-you thereof I-will-tell so as you will-be-able hear

Tibet is a great province of eight kingdoms, rich in gold dust and cinnamon, where coral fetches a high price and enchanters work such marvels by the devil's art that the book will not tell them. Its mastiffs are as big as asses. Every land the book names belongs to the great Khan or to Arghun's son, who holds from him. Caindu, to the west, has a lake of pearls that only the Khan may draw, turquoises, and money of gold rods and salt cakes; there a host gladly leaves his wife and daughters to a stranger, who hangs his hat at the door. At the river Brius, with its gold dust, the province ends.

Ci dit encore de Tebet. 115

Here tells further of Tibet

Ceste province de Tebet est une grandisme province; et

This province of Tibet is a very-great province and

ont langage par eus, si comme je vous ai dit; et

they-have language by themselves so as I to-you have said and

sont idolastres, et sont prochains de Manzi et de maintes

are idolaters and are neighbors of Manzi and of many

autres provinces. Il sont moult grant larrons. Elle est si

other provinces They are very great thieves It is so

grant province que il y a .viij. royaumes et grant quantité

great province that it there is eight kingdoms and great quantity

de citez et de chasteaus. Il y a en pluseurs lieus fluns

of cities and of castles It there is in several places rivers

et lacs là où l'en treuve leur paillole en grant quantité.

and lakes there where one finds their gold-dust in great quantity

Et y croist canelle en grant habondance. En ceste province

And there grows cinnamon in great abundance In this province

s'espant le coral, et est moult chier, car il le mettent

itself-spends the coral and it-is very dear for they it put

au col de leurs femmes et de leur idoles pour grant

at-the neck of their women and of their idols for great

joie. Encore ont, en ceste province, assez d'autres choses
joy Further they-have in this province plenty of-other things
d'or et de soie. Et y croit maintes espices qui onques
of-gold and of silk And there grows many spices which ever
ne furent veues en notre païs. Encore sachiez que il ont
not were seen in our country Further know that they have
les meilleurs enchanteurs et les meilleurs astronomiens qui
the best enchanters and the best astrologers who
soient en toutes ces provinces; car il font les greigneurs
be in all these provinces for they make the greatest
enchantemenz et les greigneurs merveilles, tout par art
enchantments and the greatest marvels all by art
dyabolique, que c'est merveilles à veoir et à oïr. Pour ce ne
diabolic that it-is marvels to see and to hear For this not
le vous conterai pas en ce notre livre; car moult s'en
it to-you I-will-tell at-all in this our book for much themselves-thereof
merveilleroient la gent, et ne seroit pas bonne honneur.
would-marvel the people and not would-be at-all good honor

Il sont moult maus acoustumés. Il ont chiens mastins
They are very ill mannered They have dogs mastiffs
grans comme asnes, qui sont moult bons à prendre bestes
great as asses which are very good at taking beasts
sauvages, dont il ont assez, si comme je vous ai dit. Il
wild of-which they have plenty so as I to-you have said They
ont encore de pluseurs autres manieres de chiens de chace.
have further of several other manners of dogs of hunt
Il ont moult bons faucons lasniers qui sont moult volans
They have very good falcons lanner which are very flying
et sevent bien oiseler; lesquiex naissent en leur montaignes.
and know well fowl which are-born in their mountains

Or vous laisserons de ceste province de Tebet, car bien
Now you we-will-leave of this province of Tibet for well
vous en aurons conté sommierement tout le fait. Et vous
to-you thereof we-will-have told summarily all the matter And to-you
dirons d'une autre province qui est appellée Gaindu. Mais,
will-tell of-an other province which is called Caindu But
de cest Tebet, entendez que il est au grant Kaan; et touz
of this Tibet understand that it is of-the great Khan and all
autres regnes, provinces et regions, qui en ce livre sont
other realms provinces and regions which in this book are
escriptes, sont aussi au grant Kaan; et touz autres regnes,
written are also of-the great Khan and all other realms
provinces et regions au commencement de cest livre, qui
provinces and regions at-the beginning of this book which
sont au filz d'Argon le seigneur de Levant, ainsi comme je
are of-the son of-Arghun the lord of East thus as I
vous ai escript aviengne, que tout est au grant sire; car
to-you have written may-it-come that all is of-the great lord for
il [le fils d'Argon] tient la terre de lingnage. Et pour ce,
he the son of-Arghun holds the land from lineage And for this
d'icelle province jusques à ores, et toutes les autres qui sont
from-that province until to now and all the others which are
contenues, sont toutes au grant Kaan. Si que, se vous ne
contained are all of-the great Khan So that if you not
les trouvez escriptes, entendez les si comme je vous ai dit.
them find written understand them so as I to-you have said

Or vous lairons de ceste matiere, et vous conterons de
Now you we-will-leave of this matter and to-you will-tell of
la province de Gaindu.
the province of Caindu

116 Ci dist de la province de Gaindu.

Here tells of the province of Caindu

Gaindu est une province vers ponent, et n'y a que un

Caindu is a province toward west and not-there is but one

roy. Il sont idolastres et sont au grant Kaan. Il y a citez

king They are idolaters and are of-the great Khan It there is cities

et chasteaus assez. Il ont un lac là où l'en treuve perles;

and castles plenty They have a lake there where one finds pearls

mais le grant Kaan ne veult que l'en les en traie, pour

but the great Khan not wishes that one them thence draw for

ce que s'il en faisoit tant traire comme on en pourroit

this that if-he thereof had so-many drawn as one thereof could

traire de leans, car moult en y a, on en trairoit tant,

draw from in-there for many thereof there are one thereof would-draw so-many

qu'elles seroient tenues pour trop viles, et n'en auroient

that-they would-be held for too vile and not-thereof would-have

aussi comme neant. Mais quant il en veulent, si en fait on

also as nothing But when he thereof wishes so thereof has one

traire pour lui à sa volenté tant comme il veult. Mais nul

drawn for him at his will as-many as he wishes But any

autre n'y porroit traire qui ne fust destruit de maintenant.

other not-there could draw who not were destroyed from at-once

Encore y a une montaigne en laquelle l'en treuve une

Further there is a mountain in which one finds a

maniere de pierre que l'en appelle turquoise, qui sont moult

manner of stone which one calls turquoise which are very

belles [pierres], et en y a grant quantité. Mais le grant

fine stones and thereof there is great quantity But the great

sire ne les en laisse traire, fors par son commandement.

lord not them thence lets draw except by his command

Et vous di que en ceste province a une coustume telle

And to-you I-tell that in this province there-is a custom such

comme je vous dirai. C'est de leur moulliers que il ne
as I to-you will-tell This-is of their wives that they not
tiennent pas à vilennie se un forestier ou un autre homme
hold at-all for villainy if a stranger or an other man
les honnisse de leur femmes, ou de leur filles, ou de
them shame with their wives or with their daughters or with
leur seror, ou d'aucune femme, s'il l'ont en leur maison;
their sister or with-any woman if-they him-have in their house
mais ont à grant bien quant l'en gist avec elles. Et dient
but hold for great good when one lies with them And they-say
que pour ce, leur fait leurs dieux et leurs idoles mieux,
that for this to-them does their gods and their idols better
et leur donnent des choses temporelles assez à grant
and to-them give of-the things temporal plenty in great
foison. Et pour ce font il si grant largesce de leur fames
plenty And for this make they so great largesse of their wives
aus forestiers et as autres genz comme je vous dirai. Car
to-the strangers and to-the other people as I to-you will-tell For
quant il voient que un forestier veult herbergier, chascun
when they see that a stranger wishes to-lodge each
est desirrant de recevoir le en son hostel. Et de maintenant
is desirous of receiving him in his lodging And from at-once
que il est herbergie, le seigneur de l'hostel ist hors tantost
that he is lodged the lord of the-lodging goes out at-once
de l'hostel, et commande que au forestier soit faite sa
from the-lodging and commands that to-the stranger be done his
volenté à compliement. Et quant il a ce dit et commandé,
will in fullness And when he has this said and commanded
si s'en va à ses vingnes ou à ses champs dehors, et
so himself-thence he-goes to his vineyards or to his fields outside and
ne retourne devant que le forestier s'en soit parti, qui
not returns before that the stranger himself-thence be departed who

aucune fois demeure trois jours ou quatre en la maison de ce
some time stays three days or four in the house of this
chetif soulaçant avec sa fame, ou sa fille, ou sa sereur; ou
wretch solacing with his wife or his daughter or his sister or
avec telle qu'il aura plus chier le deduit. A tant comme
with such as-he will-have more dear the delight At so-much as
il demeure laiens si pent à la fenestre ou à la porte le
he stays in-there so hangs at the window or at the door the
forestier, son chapel ou aucune autre enseigne qui soit seue, à
stranger his hat or some other sign which be known to
ce que le seigneur de l'hostel congnoisse que celui est encore
this that the lord of the-lodging may-know that he is still
laiens. Et, tant comme il y verra l'enseigne, il n'y
in-there And so-much as he there will-see the-sign he not-there
osera entrer. Et cest usage font par toute ceste province.
will-dare enter And this usage they-do through all this province

Il ont monnoie en tel maniere. Il ont or en verge et
They have money in such manner They have gold in rod and
le poisent à poys; et tant comme il poise il vaut. Mais
it weigh by weight and as-much as it weighs it is-worth But
nulle monnoie congniée il n'ont. Leur petite monnoie est
any money coined they not-have Their small money is
si faite. Il prennent sel et le font cuire et puis le getent
so made They take salt and it make cook and then it cast
en forme; et est si grant chascune que puet peser entour
in mold and is so great each that it-can weigh about
demie livre. Et les .lxxx. fourmes de ce sel vaut un sage
half pound And the eighty molds of this salt are-worth a saggio
d'or fin. C'est un pois, et ceste est la petite monnoie que
of-gold fine This-is a weight and this is the small money which
il despendent. Il ont des bestes qui font le mugueliat
they spend They have of-the beasts which make the musk

en grant habondance; et ont du mugueliat assez à grant
in great abundance and have of-the musk plenty in great
foison. Et ont poisson assez; et le traient du lac que
plenty And they-have fish plenty and it draw from-the lake which
je vous ai dit là où se treuve les perles. Bestes sauvages,
I to-you have said there where itself finds the pearls Beasts wild
si comme lyons, ours, et dains, et loups, et serviers et
so as lions bears and fallow-deer and wolves and lynxes and
chameus ont il assez; et oiseaus à grant foison de toutes
camels have they plenty and birds in great plenty of all
manieres ont il en grant habondance. Vin de vingnes
manners have they in great abundance Wine of vines
n'ont pas; mais il font vin de fourment et de ris et
not-they-have at-all but they make wine of wheat and of rice and
d'espices moult bons. Et croist en ceste province girofle assez.
of-spices very good And grows in this province clove plenty
Il y a un arbre petit qui a fueilles comme laurer, plus
It there is a tree small which has leaves like laurel more
longuetes et plus estroites. La fleur est blanche, petite comme
longish and more narrow The flower is white small like
de girofle. Encore ont gingembre et canelle en grant
of clove Further they-have ginger and cinnamon in great
habondance, et d'autres espices assez qui ne viennent onques
abundance and of-other spices plenty which not come ever
en notre païs; et pour ce n'en fait besoing à parler.
into our country and for this not-thereof it-is need to speak

Or vous lairons de ceste province que bien vous avons
Now you we-will-leave of this province which well to-you we-have
conté. Et dirons encore de ceste contrée meismes de Gaindu,
told And we-will-tell further of this country same of Caindu
que quant on a chevauchie dix journées toutes fois trouvant
that when one has ridden ten day-journeys all times finding

citez et chasteaus assez; les genz sont de celle meismes
cities and castles plenty the people are of that same
maniere. Il ont venoison et oiseillons assez de toutes
manner They have venison and fowl plenty of all
manieres. Et quant l'en a chevauchie ces dix journées si treuve
manners And when one has ridden these ten day-journeys so finds
l'en un flun qui est appelez Brins auquel fenist la province de
one a river which is called Brius in-which ends the province of
Gaindu. Et en ce flun treuve l'en quantité d'or de paillole;
Caindu And in this river finds one quantity of-gold of dust
et y a aussi canelle assez. Ce flun vait à la mer occeanne.
and there is also cinnamon plenty This river goes to the sea ocean

Or vous lairons de cest flun por ce qu'il n'y a
Now you we-will-leave of this river for this that-it not-there is
chose qui à ramentevoir face. Et vous conterons d'une
thing which to mention may-make And to-you will-tell of-an
autre province qui a nom Caraian, si comme vous pourrez
other province which has name Carajan so as you will-be-able
oïr et entendre si avant.
hear and understand here forward

Carajan, a land of seven kingdoms ruled by the Khan's son Esen-temür, has Yachi for its chief city, where Saracens, idolaters, and a few Nestorians live, white porcelain shells serve as money, and the people eat raw meat in a sauce. Ten days farther lies Carajan city, under the Khan's son Hügechi, rich in gold. Here live serpents ten paces long, with two clawed legs and mouths that could swallow a man; hunters kill them with blades buried in their tracks and sell the gall as a cure for mad-dog bites and hard childbirth. Before the Khan conquered them, the people killed a noble guest so that his good shadow stayed in the house.

Ci dist de la province de Caraian. 117

Here tells of the province of Carajan

Quant l'en a passé ce flun adonc treuve l'en et entre on

When one has crossed this river then finds one and enters one

en la province de Caraian qui est si grande qu'il y a .vij.

into the province of Carajan which is so great that-it there is seven

reaumes; et est vers ponent, et sont ydres et sont au grant

realms and is toward west and they-are idolaters and are of-the great

Kaan. Mais un sien filz en est roys, qui a nom Essantemur,

Khan But a his son thereof is king who has name Esen-temür

qui moult est grant roys et riches et puissant; et maintient

who very is great king and rich and powerful and maintains

bien sa terre en justice; car il est sage et preudomme.

well his land in justice for he is wise and worthy-man

Quant l'en se part du flun que je vous ai dit,

When one himself departs from-the river which I to-you have said

l'en va .v. journées par ponent trouvant villes et chasteaus

one goes five day-journeys by west finding towns and castles

assez; et c'est une province là où naissent de moult

plenty and it-is a province there where are-born of very

bons chevaus. Il vivent du bestail et du proufit

good horses They live from-the livestock and from-the profit

de la terre. Il ont language par eus qui est moult
of the earth They have language by themselves which is very
gries à entendre. Et au chief de ces .v. journées treuve
hard to understand And at-the end of these five day-journeys finds
l'en la maistre cité et celle qui est chief du regne, que
one the master city and that which is head of-the realm which
l'en appelle Jacin, qui moult est grant et noble. Il y a
one calls Yachi which very is great and noble It there is
marchans et hommes d'ars assez. Il y a genz de pluseurs
merchants and men of-crafts plenty It there is people of several
manieres; car il y a [Sarrazins et ydres] un pou de
manners for it there is Saracens and idolaters a little of
Crestiens nestorins. Il ont froument et ris assez; mais il
Christians Nestorians They have wheat and rice plenty but they
ne menguent mie le pain de froument, pour ce qu'il est
not eat at-all the bread of wheat for this that-it is
enferme ou païs; mais menguent ris et en font espices
unhealthy in-the country but they-eat rice and thereof make spices
et boisson qui moult est bon et cler. Il ont monnoie si
and drink which very is good and clear They have money so
faite; car il despendent pourcelaines blanches que l'en treuve
made for they spend porcelain-shells white which one finds
en la mer, et qui se mettent au sel, comme devant
in the sea and which themselves put to-the salt as before
est dit, et valent les .lxxx. pourcelaines un pois d'argent
is said and are-worth the eighty porcelain-shells a weight of-silver
qui font .ij. venissiens gros de Venisse, qui valent .xxiiij.
which make two Venetian groats of Venice which are-worth twenty-four
livres; et les .viij. pois d'argent valent un poys d'or.
pounds and the eight weights of-silver are-worth a weight of-gold

Il ont puis salines desquelles il font sel, et de ce
They have wells salt-springs from-which they make salt and from this
sel vivent tuit cil de la contrée. Et vous di que le roy
salt live all those of the country And to-you I-tell that the king
en a grant proufit de cest sel.
thereof has great profit from this salt

Il n'en font mie force se l'un couche à la fame à
They not-thereof make at-all force if the-one lies with the wife of
l'autre, pour que il soit à la volenté de la fame. Encore ont il
the-other provided that it be at the will of the woman Further have they
lac qui bien est grant cent milles ouquel a grant quantité
lake which well is great hundred miles in-which there-is great quantity
de poisson des meilleurs du monde, et sont moult granz et
of fish of-the best of-the world and they-are very great and
de toutes façons. Encore vous di je que la gent de cest païs
of all fashions Further to-you tell I that the people of this country
y menjuent la char crue, soit de mouton, de buef, de bugle,
there eat the meat raw be-it of mutton of beef of buffalo
de gelinne et toutes autres chars; car il vont à la boucherie
of hen and all other meats for they go to the butchery
et prennent le foye cru sitost comme il est issu de la beste
and take the liver raw as-soon as it is issued from the beast
et le taillent menueement, et le mettent en sauce que il font
and it cut small and it put in sauce which they make
d'yaue chaude et d'espices, et ainssi menguent tuit toutes les
of-water hot and of-spices and thus eat all all the
autres chars crues ainssi bien comme nous mengons la cuite.
other meats raw as well as we eat the cooked

Or vous ai conté de ce; si vous dirai encore de ceste
Now to-you I-have told of this so to-you I-will-tell further of this
dite province de Caraian que je vous ai dit ci dessus.
said province of Carajan which I to-you have said here above

118 Ci dist encore de la province de Caraian.

Here tells further of the province of Carajan

Et quant on se part de ceste cité de Jacin que je

And when one himself departs from this city of Yachi which I

vous ai dit dessus, et l'en a chevauchie .x. journées par

to-you have said above and one has ridden ten day-journeys by

ponent, si treuve l'en encore de ceste province de Caraian. Et

west so finds one still of this province of Carajan And

si treuve l'en aussi une autre maistre cité de ceste province,

so finds one also an other master city of this province

et a nom aussi, la cité Caraian. Il sont ydres et sont

and has name also the city Carajan They are idolaters and are

au grant Kaan. Et en est roys uns autres filz au grant

of-the great Khan And thereof is king an other son of-the great

Kaan, qui a nom Cogacin. En ceste contrée aussi treuve

Khan who has name Hügechi In this country also finds

l'en or de paillole à grant foison: ce est en fluns et en

one gold of dust in great plenty this is in rivers and in

lacs et en montaignes; et or plus gros que autre or. Il

lakes and in mountains and gold more coarse than other gold They

ont tant d'or, que je vous di que il donnent .i. pois d'or

have so-much of-gold that I to-you tell that they give one weight of-gold

pour .vi. pois d'argent. Et encore despendent les porcelaines

for six weights of-silver And further they-spend the porcelain-shells

que je vous ai dites. Et vous di que en cest païs ne

which I to-you have said And to-you I-tell that in this country not

treuvent pas les porcelaines, mais leur viennent d'Ynde.

they-find at-all the porcelain-shells but to-them they-come from-India

En ceste province naissent et se treuvent les

In this province are-born and themselves find the

couleuvres et les grans serpens qui sont si desmesurés que

adders and the great serpents which are so beyond-measure that

cil qui les voit en a grant paour. Et ceus qui l'oent
he who them sees thereof has great fear And those who it-hear
dire s'en devroient merveillier, si sont hideuses. Et
say themselves-thereof ought marvel so they-are hideous And
vous dirai comment elles sont grans et grosses.
to-you I-will-tell how they are great and thick

Or sachiez certainement que il en y a de telles qui
Now know certainly that it thereof there is of such which
sont longues .x. pas; et telle plus et telle mains. Et
are long ten paces and such more and such less And
sont bien si grosses comme une grosse bote qui vaille le
they-are fully as thick as a big cask which be-worth the
montant de six paumes. Et si ont deux jambes devant,
amount of six palms And so they-have two legs in-front
pres de la teste, qu'il n'ont nul pié que un ongle fait
near to the head so-that-they not-have any foot but a claw made
comme ongle de faucons ou de lyon. Le chief a moult
like claw of falcons or of lion The head it-has very
gros, et les yeux sont plus grant que un grant pain. La
big and the eyes are more great than a great loaf The
bouche a si grant que bien engloutiroit un homme entier.
mouth it-has so great that well it-would-swallow a man whole
Et sont si hideuses et si laides, et si fieres, qu'il n'y
And they-are so hideous and so ugly and so fierce that-there not-there
a homme ne beste qui ne les doubte et qui ne les crieine.
is man nor beast who not them fears and who not them dreads

La maniere comment il se prennent est ceste. Sachiez
The manner how they themselves take is this Know
que le jour il demeurent souz terre pour le grant chaut;
that the day they dwell under ground for the great heat
et la nuit issent hors pour paistre, et menjuent toutes les
and the night they-issue out for to-graze and eat all the

bestes qu'il pevent attaindre. Et si vont boire aus fluns
beasts that-they can reach And so they-go drink at-the rivers
et aus lacs et aus fontaines. Et si sont si pesant que
and at-the lakes and at-the fountains And so they-are so heavy that
quant elles vont pour mengier ou pour paistre, c'est de nuit,
when they go for to-eat or for to-graze this-is by night
si fait au sablon si grant fosse de sa queue, si semble
so it-makes in-the sand so great ditch with its tail so it-seems
que l'en oste une botte plaine, et les chasseurs qui vont
that one removes a cask full and the hunters who go
pour eus prendre, proprement les prennent en tel maniere:
for them to-take especially them take in such manner
car il mettent un engin en leurs voies par où elles sont
for they put a device in their ways by where they are
passées, pour ce que il sevent qu'elles doivent par là
passed for this that they know that-they must by there
retourner. Il fichent en terre un pel de fust et bien
return They fix in ground a stake of wood and well
en parfont. Et en ce pel dessus a fichie un bon fer
in deep And in this stake above they-have fixed a good iron
tranchant fait en guise d'un raseoir; et les cueuvrent de
cutting made in guise of-a razor and them cover with
sablon à ce que les couleuvres ne les voient. Et de si faiz
sand to this that the adders not them see And of so made
piex avec fers, mettent li chasseur pluseurs parmi ses voies.
stakes with irons put the hunters several through its ways
Où ces fers sont, si se fiert de si tres grant randon
Where these irons are so itself strikes with so very great force
que le fer li entre parmi le piz et la fent jusques au
that the iron to-it enters through the breast and it splits until to-the
nombril; si qu'elle meurt de maintenant. Et en telle maniere
navel so that-it dies from at-once And in such manner

les prennent, li chasseur. Et quant il les ont prises, si
them take the hunters And when they them have taken so
leur traient le fiel du ventre et le vendent moult
from-them they-draw the gall from-the belly and it sell very
chier. Car sachiez que l'en en fait moult grant medecine.
dear For know that one thereof makes very great medicine
Car si une personne estoit morse d'un chien erragié et l'en
For if a person were bitten by-a dog mad and one
lui en donne un pou à boire, tant comme seroit le
to-him thereof gives a little to drink as-much as would-be the
pois d'un petit denier, il seroit gueriz de maintenant. Et
weight of-a little penny he would-be cured from at-once And
encore quant une dame ne puet enfanter se l'en lui en
further when a lady not can give-birth if one to-her thereof
donne un autre autel poys si enfantera de maintenant.
gives an other such weight so she-will-give-birth from at-once
Encore, qui auroit aucune maladie, si comme roigne ou
Further who would-have any malady so as mange or
autre pievre chose, et l'en meist un poi sus de cel fiel, il
other worse thing and one put a little upon of that gall he
gariroit en brief terme; si que, pour ce, est il vendu si
would-be-cured in brief term so that for this is it sold so
chier. Encore vendent il la char de cel serpent; car elle est
dear Further sell they the meat of that serpent for it is
moult bonne à mengier, et la menjuent moult volentiers. Et
very good to eat and it they-eat very willingly And
quant ces serpens ont grant faim, si vont aucunes fois aus
when these serpents have great hunger so they-go some times to-the
nis où les lyons, ou les ours, ou les autres grans bestes et
nests where the lions or the bears or the other great beasts and
fieres sont. Et menjuent les petiz, que leur pere ne leur
fierce are And they-eat the young-ones so-that their father nor their

mere ne le pevent aidier. Et quant il attrapent les grans,
mother not them can help And when they catch the great-ones
si les menjuent aussi; car il ne se pevent deffendre.
so them they-eat also for they not themselves can defend
En ceste province encore naissent grans chevaus et bons,
In this province further are-born great horses and good
et les mainent en Ynde à vendre. Mais sachiez que il
and them they-lead into India to sell But know that they
leur traient deux neus ou trois de la queue, à ce que
from-them draw two joints or three of the tail to this that
le cheval ne puisse mener la queue à donner à ceus qui
the horse not may move the tail to give to those who
les chevauchent; car il leur est moult vilaine chose. Et
them ride for it to-them is very villainous thing And
[sachiez que ces genz] chevauchent lonc comme François.
know that these people ride long like Frenchmen
Et si ont armes cuiracés de cuir boulli; et ont lances
And so they-have arms cuirasses of leather boiled and have lances
et escus et arbalestes, et enveniment touz leur quarriaus.
and shields and crossbows and poison all their bolts
Et si vous diront d'une male chose que il faisoient avant
And so to-you will-tell of-an evil thing which they did before
que le grant Kaan les conquestat; que se il avenist que
that the great Khan them conquered that if it happened that
un bel homme, ou un gentil homme ou un autre qui leur
a fine man or a noble man or an other who to-them
semblast, qui venist herbergier en leur maison, si l'occioient
seemed who came to-lodge in their house so him-they-killed
ou l'envelimoient; si que il moroit. Et ne le faisoient pas
or him-poisoned so that he died And not it they-did at-all
pour rober li le sien; mais le faisoient pour ce qu'il
for to-rob him the his but it they-did for this that-they

disoient que la bonne ombre et la bonne grace que celui
said that the good shadow and the good grace which he
avoit, et son bon sens, et s'ame remanoit toute en la
had and his good sense and his-soul remained all in the
maison de celui où il estoit mort. Et pour ceste achoison
house of him where he was dead And for this occasion
en occioient assez avant que il fussent conquesté du
thereof they-killed plenty before that they were conquered by-the
grant Kaan. Mais puis que il conquesta, que entour .xxxv.
great Khan But since that he conquered which about thirty-five
ans, ne font plus celle male aventure, ne celui malusage; et
years not they-do more that evil adventure nor that evil-usage and
si est pour la doute du grant Kaan, qui ne leur laisse faire.
so it-is for the fear of-the great Khan who not them lets do

Or vous ai dit de ceste contrée, ci vous dirai d'une
Now to-you I-have said of this country here to-you I-will-tell of-an
autre ci avant.
other here forward

Five days west, the men of Zardandan cover their teeth with gold and do nothing but hunt and make war, while the women and slaves do all the work. When a woman gives birth, her husband takes to bed with the child for forty days. They worship the eldest of the house, keep accounts by notched sticks, and have no physicians: when one falls sick, enchanters dance until a spirit enters one of them and says what sacrifice of black-headed sheep and spiced drinks it wants, and the sick man recovers or dies as it says.

119 Ci dist de la province de Zardandan.

Here tells of the province of Zardandan

Quant l'en est parti de Caraian et l'en chevauche .v. journées par ponent, si treuve l'en une province que l'en appelle Zardandan. Il sont idolastres et sont au grant Kaan. La maistre cité si a nom Vocian. Les gens de ceste contrée si ont toutes les dens dorées; c'est que chascun a couvertes ses dens d'or; car il font une forme d'or faite en la maniere de leur denz et cueuvrent leur denz de celle fourme; et aussi les denz desseure comme celles dessouz. Et ce sont les hommes et non pas les femmes; car les hommes sont tuit chevaliers selonc leur usage; et ne font riens

When one is departed from Carajan and one rides five day-journeys by west so finds one a province which one calls Zardandan They are idolaters and are of-the great Khan The master city so has name Vochan The people of this country so have all the teeth gilded that-is that each has covered his teeth with-gold for they make a form of-gold made in the manner of their teeth and cover their teeth with that form and also the teeth above as those below And these are the men and not at-all the women for the men are all knights according-to their usage and not do anything

fors que aler en l'ost, et aler chacier et oiseler. Les dames
except that go into the-host and go hunt and fowl The ladies
font toutes les choses, et leur esclaz qu'il ont conquesté
do all the things and their slaves whom-they have conquered
d'autre part; et leurs femmes font toutes les besoingnes.
from-other part and their women do all the tasks

Et quant leurs femmes ont enfanté, si lavent l'enfant et
And when their women have given-birth so they-wash the-child and
l'enveloppent en draps, et de maintenant se lieve et va
it-wrap in cloths and from at-once herself she-rises and goes
faire son service; et le mari entre ou lit et tient l'enfant
do her service and the husband enters into-the bed and holds the-child
avec lui et gist ainssi .xl. jours; et touz ceus, amis et parens,
with him and lies thus forty days and all those friends and kin
le viennent veoir. Et li font grant joie et grant soulaz.
him come see And to-him make great joy and great solace
Et ce font il pour ce que il dient que la femme a enduré
And this do they for this that they say that the woman has endured
grant travail; si est raison que l'homme sueffre aussi sa part.
great toil so it-is reason that the-man suffer also his part

Il menjuent toutes chars crues et cuites, et menjuent
They eat all meats raw and cooked and eat
ris avec chars cuites selonc leur usage. Il boivent vin que
rice with meats cooked according-to their usage They drink wine which
il font de ris, avec espices, moult bon. Et leur monnoie est
they make of rice with spices very good And their money is
d'or. Et encore despendent aussi les porcelainnes. Et si vous
of-gold And further they-spend also the porcelain-shells And so to-you
di que il donnent .i. pois d'or pour .v. pois d'argent; et
I-tell that they give one weight of-gold for five weights of-silver and
c'est pour ce qu'il n'ont nulle argentiere a plus de .v. mois
this-is for this that-they not-have any silver-mine at more than five months

de chemin. Et pour ce y viennent li marchant qui leur
of road And for this there come the merchants who to-them
aportent moult d'argent, et le gaaingnent et changent avec
bring much of-silver and it gain and exchange with
ceste monnoie; et leur donnent .v. pois d'argent pour .i.
this money and to-them give five weights of-silver for one
pois de fin or. Et, en ce, gaaingnent moult les marchans et
weight of fine gold And in this gain much the merchants and
en traient grant profit de ceste province pour ce change.
thereof draw great profit from this province for this exchange

Ces genz n'ont ydoles ne eglises, mais aourent le plus grant
These people not-have idols nor churches but worship the most great
de la maison et dient que de cestui sommes nous issus.
of the house and say that from this-one are we issued
Il n'ont nulle lettre, ne ne font escripture; et ce n'est pas
They not-have any letter nor not make writing and this not-is at-all
merveille, car il sont en moult desvoiable voie, et en moult
marvel for they are in very out-of-the-way way and in very
sauvages lieus, de granz bois et de granz montaignes, que en
wild places of great woods and of great mountains so-that one
n'y puet passer pour rien du monde, pour ce que l'air est
not-there can pass for anything of-the world for this that the-air is
si corrompu et si mauvais que nul forestier n'eschaperoit qu'il
so corrupt and so bad that any stranger not-would-escape that-he
ne morust. Et quant ces genz ont à faire l'un avec l'autre, il
not should-die And when these people have to do the-one with the-other they
prennent un pou de fust, reont ou quarré, et le fendent. Et
take a little of wood round or square and it split And
en chascune moitié si font deux oches ou trois. Et quant
in each half so they-make two notches or three And when
il se paient il prennent leur buche que celui aura.
they themselves pay they take their stick which he will-have

Et si vous di que ces troys provinces que je vous
And so to-you I-tell that these three provinces which I to-you
ai dites, c'est assavoir: Caraian et Vocian et Jacin, n'ont
have said this-is to-know Carajan and Vochan and Yachi not-have
nul mire. Mais quant il sont malade il font venir leur
any physician But when they are sick they have come their
enchanteeur de diables; ce sont ceus qui tiennent les idoles.
enchanters of devils these are those who keep the idols
Et quant il sont venuz et les malades leur dient leur mal.
And when they are come and the sick to-them tell their ill
Et quant il leur ont dit, si font de maintenant, ces
And when they to-them have said so they-make from at-once these
dit enchanteeurs, sonner instrumenz; commencent à chanter
said enchanters sound instruments they-begin to sing
et à karoler. Et tant saillent que aucun de ces enchanteurs
and to dance And so-much they-leap that some of these enchanters
charra à terre aussi comme pasmes et comme mort. Et
will-fall to ground also as swooned and like dead And
c'est que le dyable li est entrez el cors. Et quant ses
this-is that the devil to-him is entered in-the body And when his
compaignons le verront si appareillie, si li commencent
companions him will-see so prepared so to-him they-begin
à dire et à demander quel maladie ce est que li malades
to say and to ask what malady it is that the sick
a. Et celui leur respont: tel esprit l'a couchie, pour ce
has And he to-them answers such spirit him-has laid-low for this
que il l'a courroucie et fait aucun desplaisir. Et il li
that he him-has angered and done some displeasure And they to-him
dient: «Nous te prions que tu li pardonnes et que tu
say We thee pray that thou to-him pardon and that thou
en prengnes pour ce restaurement, de son sanc ou de
thereof take for this amends of his blood or of

ses autres choses, ce que tu voudras tout à ta volenté.»
his other things that which thou wilt-wish all at thy will
Et quant il ont tant dit et prié, si respont adonc celui
And when they have so-much said and prayed so answers then that
maligne esprit qui sera ou corps de celui cheus: «Cestui
evil spirit which will-be in-the body of him fallen This
malade a tant mesfait à tel autre esprit, et est si mauvais
sick-man has so-much misdone to such other spirit and is so wicked
qu'il ne li veult pardonner pour nulle chose du monde.»
that-he not to-him wishes to-pardon for any thing of-the world
Ceste response ont quant le malade doit morir. Et quant
This answer they-have when the sick must die And when
il doit guerir, si leur dit que il prengnent deux moutons
he must recover so to-them he-says that they take two sheep
ou trois. Et encore qu'il facent .x. ou .xij. buvrages qui
or three And further that-they make ten or twelve drinks which
sont moult chiers et moult bons et bien espicés. Et encore
are very dear and very good and well spiced And further
que ces moutons aient le chief noir; ou les devisera d'autre
that these sheep have the head black or them will-specify of-other
couleur tout à sa volenté; et que de toutes ces choses
color all at his will and that of all these things
facent sacrefice à tel esprit; et le nommera. Et que
they-make sacrifice to such spirit and him will-name And that
encore il aient tant d'enchanteeurs avec eus, et tant
further they have so-many of-enchanters with them and so-many
de dames; et que toutes ces choses doient faire à grant
of ladies and that all these things they-must do with great
laudes et à grans chans et avec grans luminaires et
praises and with great chants and with great lights and
avec bonnes oudeurs. Et ainssi leur respont l'esprit quant
with good odors And thus to-them answers the-spirit when

le malade doit guerir. Et de maintenant les parens au
the sick must recover And from at-once the kin of-the
malade, qui ce auront ouy, si prennent tout ce qu'il leur
sick who this will-have heard so take all that which-he to-them
aura commandé à faire, et le font. Et celui enchanteur,
will-have commanded to do and it do And that enchanter
qui ce aura dit, se lievera. Et maintenant prennent les
who this will-have said himself will-rise And at-once they-take the
moutons de la couleur qu'il leur aura dit. Il prennent
sheep of the color which-he to-them will-have said They take
ces moutons et les occient; et espandent le sanc es lieus
these sheep and them kill and spill the blood in-the places
qui leur auront esté dit, et des dames aussi, à l'onneur
which to-them will-have been said and of-the ladies also to the-honor
et au sacrefice de cel esprit. Et puis font cuire les
and to-the sacrifice of that spirit And then they-make cook the
moutons en la maison au malade. Et si y viennent tant
sheep in the house of-the sick And so there come so-many
d'enchanteurs comme leur aura esté dit, et des dames
of-enchanters as to-them will-have been said and of-the ladies
aussi. Et quant il sont tuit venu et assemblé, et les
also And when they are all come and assembled and the
choses sont toutes appareilliées, si commencent maintenant
things are all prepared so they-begin at-once
et à baller, et à sonner, et à chanter à la loenge de
both to dance and to sound and to sing to the praise of
tel esprit. Et prennent du brouet de la char, et encore
such spirit And they-take of-the broth of the meat and further
ont buvrage et lingnalouet et vont ensement avec encens
they-have drink and aloe-wood and go likewise with incense
çà et là à tout grant luminaire. Et le brouet et les
here and there with all great lights And the broth and the

buvrages vont espandant çà et là, et de la char aussi.
drinks they-go spilling here and there and of the meat also
Et quant il ont ainssi fait une piece, si chiet une autre
And when they have thus done a while so falls an other
fois un de ces enchanteeurs, et demeure sus l'escume à la
time one of these enchanters and remains with the-foam at the
bouche. Et les autres enchanteeurs li demandent se il est
mouth And the other enchanters him ask if it is
encore au malade perdonné; et aucune fois il respont que
yet to-the sick pardoned and some time he answers that
«oil»; et aucune fois il respont que «non». Et quant il ne
yes and some time he answers that no And when it not
lui est point pardonné si refont encore tel chose et
to-him is whit pardoned so they-do-again further such thing and
tel, si comme il vourra dire: que adonc li sera pardonné;
such so as he will-wish to-say that then to-him will-be pardoned
et cil le font maintenant. Et quant tout ce que l'esprit
and they it do at-once And when all that which the-spirit
aura commandé sera fait, avec grans sacrefices, si leur
will-have commanded will-be done with great sacrifices so to-them
dist adonc qu'il est pardonné, et qu'il sera prochainement
he-says then that-it is pardoned and that-he will-be soon
gueriz. Et quant il ont eue ceste response, si dient adonc
cured And when they have had this answer so they-say then
que l'esprit est bien de leur part, et est bien apaisie; et
that the-spirit is well of their part and is well appeased and
commencent à mengier à grant joie et à grant soulaz.
begin to eat with great joy and with great solace
Et celui qui sera cheus comme pasmes à terre, se lieve
And he who will-be fallen as swooned to ground himself rises
et mengue avec eus. Et quant il ont tout mengie et
and eats with them And when they have all eaten and

beu, si se part chascun et va en son hostel. Et de
drunk so himself departs each and goes to his lodging And from
maintenant se lieve le malade tout sain et tout gari.
at-once himself rises the sick all healthy and all cured

Or vous ai conté la maniere et les mauvais usages de ceste
Now to-you I-have told the manner and the wicked usages of this
gent; si vous lairons à conter d'eus et de ceste province. Et
people so you we-will-leave to tell of-them and of this province And
vous conterons des autres ainssi comme vous pourrez oïr et
to-you will-tell of-the others thus as you will-be-able hear and
entendre ci avant tout apertement par ordre, l'un apres l'autre.
understand here forward all openly by order the-one after the-other

VIII · THE BATTLE OF VOCHAN

In 1272 the Khan sent an army to guard Vochan and Carajan, and the king of Mien and Bengal resolved to destroy it. He came with two thousand elephants, each carrying a wooden castle of twelve to sixteen fighters, and sixty thousand men. The Tartar captain Nasruddin, with only twelve thousand horsemen, waited for him on the plain of Vochan beside a great wood. When the king advanced, the Tartars' horses took fright at the elephants and would not go forward.

Ci dit comment le grant Kaan conquesta les royaumes de 120
Here tells how the great Khan conquered the kingdoms of
Mien et de Bangala.
Mien and of Bengal

Et or sachiez que nous vous avions oblié à conter une
And now know that we to-you had forgotten to tell a
moult belle bataille qui fu ou royaume de Vocian qui
very fine battle which was in-the kingdom of Vochan which
est en la province de Zardandan, qui bien fait à recorder
is in the province of Zardandan which well is-fit to record

en ce notre livre. Et pour ce nous le conterons tout
in this our book And for this we it will-tell all
apertement, comment il avint et en quel maniere.
openly how it happened and in what manner
Il fu voir que mil .cc.lxxij. (1272) ans de
It was true that a-thousand two-hundred-seventy-two 1272 years of
Crist, le grant Kaan envoia grant ost en ce royaume de
Christ the great Khan sent great host into this kingdom of
Vocian et de Caraian pour ce qu'il fussent gardé et sauvé
Vochan and of Carajan for this that-they were guarded and saved
de male gent, qu'il ne leur feissent domage; car encore
from evil people so-that-they not to-them should-do damage for yet
n'y avoit envoié nul de ses filz pour seigneur, si comme
not-there he-had sent any of his sons for lord so as
il fist puis; car il en fist roy Sentemour qui filz estoit
he did afterward for he thereof made king Esen-temür who son was
à son filz, qui mors estoit. Or avint que le roy de Mien
to his son who dead was Now it-happened that the king of Mien
et de Bangala qui moult estoit puissant roys de terre et de
and of Bengal who very was powerful king of land and of
tresor et de genz; et cestui n'estoit encore souz le grant
treasure and of people and this-one not-was yet under the great
Kaan; mais puis ne demoura gaires de temps que le grant
Khan but afterward not remained much of time that the great
Kaan les conquesta, et li toli andeus les royaumes que
Khan them conquered and from-him took both the kingdoms which
je vous ai ci dessus nommez. Et cest roy de Mien et
I to-you have here above named And this king of Mien and
de Bangala quant il sot que l'ost du grant Kaan estoit
of Bengal when he knew that the-host of-the great Khan was
à Vocian si dist à soi meismes que il estoit maistre; et
at Vochan so he-said to himself self that he was master and

que, il maistre, mettroit à mort tout l'ost du grant Kaan;
that he master would-put to death all the-host of-the great Khan
à ce que jamais n'eust volenté d'envoier illec son ost.
to this that ever-more not-he-should-have will of-sending there his host
Si fist cel roy de maintenant grant appareil de genz et
So made that king from at-once great equipment of people and
d'armes. Et vous dirai comment il ot .ij.m. (2,000)
of-arms And to-you I-will-tell how he had two-thousand 2,000
oliffans moult grans; et fist faire sus chascun un chasteau de
elephants very great and had made upon each a castle of
fust moult bien fait et fort, pour combatre. Et en chascun
wood very well made and strong for to-fight And in each
chastel avoit jusques à .xij. ou à .xvj. hommes pour
castle there-were as-many-as to twelve or to sixteen men for
combatre, bien appareilliez. Et encore y ot gent à cheval
to-fight well equipped And further there were people on horse
et à pié bien .lx.m. (60,000). Il fist si bel appareil que
and on foot fully sixty-thousand 60,000 He made so fine equipment that
bien sembloit qu'il fust puissant seigneur, si comme il l'estoit.
well it-seemed that-he were powerful lord so as he it-was
Car ce fu bien un ost de faire grant effors de bataille.
For this was well a host for to-make great effort of battle
Et que vous en diroie je? Cest roy quant il ot fait
And what to-you thereof would-tell I This king when he had made
si grant effors, si comme je vous ai conté, pour combatre
so great effort so as I to-you have told for to-fight
contre les Tatars, si ne fist nulle demourance mais tout
against the Tartars so not made any delay but all
maintenant se mist à la voie. Et tant ala sans
at-once himself put to the way And so-far he-went without
aventure trouver, qui à conter face, que il vindrent à
adventure finding which to tell may-make that they came to

trois journéez près l'ost au grant Kaan, qui estoit adonc
three day-journeys near the-host of-the great Khan which was then
en la cité de Vocian qui est el regne de Zardandan, si
in the city of Vochan which is in-the realm of Zardandan so
comme je vous ai autrefoiz dit ci arriere. Et illec mit son
as I to-you have other-time said here back And there he-put his
champ pour demourer et pour reposer ses genz et son ost.
camp for to-stay and for to-rest his people and his host

121 Ci dist de la bataille qui fu entre l'ost et le sénéchal
Here tells of the battle which was between the-host and the seneschal
au grant Kaan et le roy de Mien.
of-the great Khan and the king of Mien

Et quant le chevetaine de l'ost des Tatars sot
And when the captain of the-host of-the Tartars knew
certainement que ce roy lui venoit seure à si grant
certainly that this king to-him came upon with so great
gent, si douta pour ce qu'il n'avoit que .xij.m. (12,000)
people so he-feared for this that-he not-had but twelve-thousand 12,000
hommes à cheval. Mais, sans faille, il estoit moult vaillant
men on horse But without fail he was very valiant
homme d'armes et sages et acostumez d'armes et de
man of-arms and wise and accustomed to-arms and to
bataille et moult bons chevetaine d'ost; et avoit nom
battle and very good captain of-host and had name
Nescraidin. Il ordena moult et amonesta bien bien sa gent,
Nasruddin He ordered much and admonished well well his people
et bien pourchassa de deffendre son ost et soi; car il avoit
and well strove to defend his host and himself for he had
moult bonnes genz d'armes o soi. Et pour quoi vous
very good people of-arms with himself And for what to-you
en ferions lonc compte? Sachiez que l'ost des Tatars
thereof we-would-make long tale Know that the-host of-the Tartars

s'en vindrent tuit ensemble .xij.m. à cheval bien
themselves-thence came all together twelve-thousand on horse well
montez, au plain de Vocian, à lor anemis. Et illec les
mounted to-the plain of Vochan to their enemies And there them
attendoient à la bataille. Et ce firent il par grant sens et
they-awaited at the battle And this did they by great sense and
par bon chevetaine que il avoient; car de jouste ce plain
by good captain which they had for of beside this plain
avoit un bois moult grant et moult plain d'arbres. En
there-was a wood very great and very full of-trees In
tel maniere attendoient, les Tatars, leur anemis en ce plain.
such manner awaited the Tartars their enemies in this plain

Or laissons un poi à parler des Tatars, car bien y
Now let-us-leave a little to speak of-the Tartars for well there
retournerons prochainement; et parlons de leur anemis.
we-will-return soon and let-us-speak of their enemies

Or sachiez que quant le roy de Mien fu sejornez et reposez
Now know that when the king of Mien was sojourned and rested
avec son ost, si se partirent d'illec où il estoient et
with his host so themselves they-departed from-there where they were and
se mistrent à la voie et vindrent au plain de Vocian
themselves put to the way and came to-the plain of Vochan
là où les Tatars estoient touz appareilliez. Et quant il
there where the Tartars were all made-ready And when they
furent venuz en cel plain pres de leur anemis, à une mille,
were come into that plain near of their enemies at a mile
si fist appareilliez, le roy, les olifans à touz leur chastiaus,
so had made-ready the king the elephants with all their castles
et les hommes dessus pour combatre. Et puis ordena ses
and the men above for to-fight And then he-ordered his
hommes à cheval et à pié moult bien et sagement, comme
men on horse and on foot very well and wisely as

sage roys que il estoit. Et quant il ot ordené et acepté
wise king that he was And when he had ordered and arranged
tout son afaire, si commença à aler contre ses anemis à
all his affair so he-began to go against his enemies to
bataille. Et quant les Tatars les virent, si firent semblant
battle And when the Tartars them saw so they-made semblance
d'estre de riens esbahis; et se mistrent à la voie bien
of-being in nothing astonished and themselves put to the way well
et ordeneement et sagement, contre leur anemis. Et quant
and orderly and wisely against their enemies And when
il leur furent pres, et que il n'y avoit mais que du
they to-them were near and that it not-there was more than of-the
commencier la bataille: adonc les chevaus des Tatars, quant
beginning the battle then the horses of-the Tartars when
il virent les olifans, si s'espouvanterent en tel maniere que il
they saw the elephants so themselves-took-fright in such manner that they
ne les povoient avant mener vers leur anemis à la bataille;
not them could forward lead toward their enemies to the battle
mais s'en tornoient toutes foiz arriere. Et le roy et
but themselves-thence turned all times back And the king and
sa gent atout les olifans aloient touzjours avant sus euls.
his people with-all the elephants went always forward upon them

The Tartar captain had his men dismount, tie their horses in the wood, and shoot their arrows at the elephants, which, maddened by the wounds, fled into the wood and smashed their castles. Then the Tartars remounted and fell on the king's men with swords and maces in a battle so fierce that one could not hear God thundering, and by noon the king's army broke and fled. With the help of the king's captured men the Tartars took more than two hundred elephants, and from then on the Khan kept many.

Encore de ceste meisme bataille. 122

Further of this same battle

Quant les Tatars orent ce veu, si en orent grant ire,

When the Tartars had this seen so thereof had great anger

et ne savoient que il disoient, ne qu'il deussent faire; car

and not knew what they said nor what-they should do for

il veoient clerement que se il ne pooient avant mener leur

they saw clearly that if they not could forward lead their

chevaus à la bataille qu'il auroient du tout perdu. Mais

horses to the battle that-they would-have of-the all lost But

leur chevetaine fist comme sage, et comme cil qui tout ce

their captain did as wise and as he who all this

avoit pensé. De maintenant commanda que chascun descendit

had thought From at-once he-commanded that each descend

de son cheval et que on atachast les chevaus aus arbres du

from his horse and that one should-tie the horses to-the trees of-the

bois qui pres d'eulx estoit, et que il meissent mains aus

wood which near of-them was and that they put hands to-the

ars; laquelle chose il sevent bien faire miex que gent qui

bows which thing they know well do better than people who

au monde soit. Et il le firent ainssi, et mistrent mains

in-the world be And they it did thus and put hands

aus ars et trairent tant de pilles à ces olifans qui venoient
to-the bows and shot so-many of arrows at these elephants which came
avant, que il en navrerent et en tuerent la plus grant
forward that they thereof wounded and thereof killed the most great
part, et des hommes aussi, en poi d'eure. Et ceus de là
part and of-the men also in little of-hour And those of there
en traioient aussi aus Tatars; mais les Tatars estoient mielz
thereof shot also at-the Tartars but the Tartars were better
armez, et mielz savoient traire d'ars que ceus ne faisoient.
armed and better knew shoot of-bows than those — did

Et que vous diroie-je? Sachiez que quant les olifans
And what to-you would-tell-I Know that when the elephants
sentirent les angoisses des navreures des pilles dont il leur
felt the anguishes of-the wounds of-the arrows of-which it to-them
en venoit tant comme pluie, si s'en tournerent
thereof came as-much as rain so themselves-thence turned
arriere en fuie; que pour riens du monde ne feussent
back in flight so-that for anything of-the world not they-would-have
alé avant vers les Tatars. Et s'en aloient fuiant, et
gone forward toward the Tartars And themselves-thence went fleeing and
si grant noise faisant et si grant bruit, qu'il sembloit que
so great noise making and so great din that-it seemed that
tout le monde deust fondre. Et se mistrent dedens
all the world should founder And themselves put within
le bois, et aloient çà et là, rompant leurs chasteaux et
the wood and went here and there breaking their castles and
leur hernois; et gasterent et destruirent toutes leur choses.
their harness and spoiled and destroyed all their things

Et quant les Tatars virent ce, que les olifans estoient
And when the Tartars saw this that the elephants were
tourné en fuie, et que plus ne retorneroient pour riens
turned in flight and that more not would-return for anything

du monde à la bataille; si monterent tout maintenant à
of-the world to the battle so mounted all at-once on
cheval et alerent seure leur anemis. Et si commencièrent la
horse and went upon their enemies And so they-began the
bataille moult asprement aus espées et aus maces. Et
battle very harshly with-the swords and with-the maces And
si couroient les uns sus les autres moult fellonnessement,
so ran the ones upon the others very fiercely
et se donnoient moult grans coups, car les genz le
and themselves gave very great blows for the people (of-)the
Roy estoient plus que Tatars; mais il n'estoient pas si
King were more than Tartars but they not-were at-all so
bonne gent, ne si usé de guerre comme les Tatars; car
good people nor so used to war as the Tartars for
autrement ne peussent avoir duré les Tatars qui estoient si
otherwise not could have lasted the Tartars who were so
poi de gent contre eus, se ne ce feust. Et or peust l'en
few of people against them if not this were And now could one
veoir donner et recevoir grans coups d'espées et de maces,
see give and receive great blows of-swords and of maces
et veoir occirre chevaliers et chevaus et sergeans; et veoir
and see kill knights and horses and sergeants and see
couper bras et mains et cuisses et testes; et maint en
cut arms and hands and thighs and heads and many thereof
cheoient à la terre, mors et navrés qui jamais ne relevoient,
fell to the earth dead and wounded who ever-more not rose-again
pour la grant presse qui y estoient. La criée et la noise
for the great press which there was The outcry and the noise
y estoit si grant d'une part et d'autre que l'en n'y
there was so great on-one part and on-other that one not-there
peust pas oïr Dieu tonnant. Et estoit l'estour et la bataille
could at-all hear God thundering And was the-fray and the battle

moult grant et moult pesme et moult perilleuse d'une
very great and very evil and very perilous on-one
part et d'autre; mais les Tatars en avoient le meilleur.
part and on-other but the Tartars thereof had the better
Et de mal eure fu commencie la bataille pour le roy et
And in ill hour was begun the battle for the king and
pour sa gent, tant en y ot d'occis. Et quant la bataille
for his people so-many thereof there were of-killed And when the battle
ot duré jusques à midi, si ne porent plus durer les genz
had lasted until to noon so not could more endure the people
au roy, à la force des Tatars. Mais se mistrent en
of-the king at the force of-the Tartars But themselves put in
desconfiture et tournerent en fuie. Et quant les Tatars les
defeat and turned in flight And when the Tartars them
virent desconfiz, si leur aloient derriere chassant et occiant
saw defeated so after-them they-went behind chasing and killing
et abatant si malement que ce estoit une pitié à veoir. Et
and striking-down so evilly that it was a pity to see And
quant il les orent une piece chassiez, si ne les voudrent
when they them had a while chased so not them they-wished
plus suivre; mais retournerent arriere es bois pour prendre
more to-follow but returned back to-the woods for to-take
des olifans qui estoient là fouis. Et leur convenoit taillier
of-the elephants which were there fled And to-them it-behooved cut
les grans arbres et mettre leur au devant pour avoir les.
the great trees and put to-them in-the before for to-have them
Et avec tout ce ne les povoient avoir, se ne fussent les
And with all this not them they-could have if not were the
hommes meismes du roy, qui avoient esté pris, qui miex les
men very of-the king who had been taken who better them
savoient congnoistre que les Tatars. Et ainssi les prenoient;
knew know than the Tartars And thus them they-took

car les olifans ont plus grant entendement que nulle beste. Et
for the elephants have more great understanding than any beast And
ainssi en prindrent plus de deux cenz. Et de ceste bataille
thus thereof they-took more than two hundred And from this battle
en avant commença le grant Kaan à avoir moult d'olifans.
on forward began the great Khan to have many of-elephants
Et en tel maniere fu desconfit ce roy, par le sens et par
And in such manner was defeated this king by the sense and by
la maistrise des Tatars; si comme vous povez avoir entendu.
the mastery of-the Tartars so as you can have understood

X · THE DESCENT TO MIEN AND ITS TOWERS

Beyond a descent of two and a half days, where a market trades gold for silver five to one with a people who let no one learn where they live, fifteen days of wilderness full of elephants and unicorns lead to Mien. There a king had two towers raised over his tomb, one covered with gold and one with silver a finger thick, hung with bells that ring in the wind. The Khan sent his jongleurs with a captain to conquer the country, and when they asked what to do with the towers he forbade their destruction, since no Tartar will touch what belongs to the dead.

Comment l'en descent une grant vallée. 123
How one descends a great valley

Quant l'en se part de celle province que je vous ai
When one himself departs from that province which I to-you have
contée, adonc treuve l'en une grant descendue. Car, sachiez,
told then finds one a great descent For know
l'en chevauche .ii. journées et demie toutes fois à déclin.
one rides two day-journeys and a-half all times at decline
Et en toute ceste descendue n'a chose qui à conter
And in all this descent not-there-is thing which to tell

face; fors seulement qu'il y a une moult grant place
may-make except only that-it there is a very great place
là où il treuvent aucune fois grant marchie; car toutes
there where they find some times great market for all
les genz de celle contrée environ y viennent à aucuns
the people of that country around there come on some
jours nommés et tiennent là leur marchiez trois jours
days named and hold there their markets three days
la semeine. Il changent or pour argent; car il ont de
the week They change gold for silver for they have of
l'or assez. Il donnent un pois de fin or pour cinq pois
the-gold plenty They give a weight of fine gold for five weights
d'argent fin; et pour ce y viennent marchans de pluseurs
of-silver fine and for this there come merchants from several
parties qui portent leur argent; et le portent, si comme je
parts who carry their silver and it carry so as I
vous ai dit, à or avec ces genz; de quoi les marchans font
to-you have said for gold with these people of which the merchants make
grandement leur proufit. Et la gent de ceste contrée qui
greatly their profit And the people of this country who
portent l'or à tel marchie, sachiez que nus ne puet savoir
carry the-gold to such market know that anyone not can know
leur maisons, pour ce que il demeurent en lieus desvoiables
their houses for this that they dwell in places out-of-the-way
pour paour de males gens; si que nul ne leur puet mal
for fear of evil people so that anyone not to-them can harm
faire, tant ont leur habitations en lieus fors et sauvages.
do so-much they-have their dwellings in places strong and wild
Et ne vuelent que nus voise avec eus pour savoir les.
And not they-wish that anyone go with them for to-know them

Et quant l'en a chevauchie ces .ii. journées et demie à
And when one has ridden these two day-journeys and a-half at
declin, si treuve l'en une province qui est vers midi, et est
decline so finds one a province which is toward south and is
assez prochaine d'Inde. Et est appellée, celle province, Amien.
quite near of-India And is called that province Mien
L'en chevauche .xv. journées par moult desvoiables lieux et
One rides fifteen day-journeys through very out-of-the-way places and
par grans boscages là où il a olifans et unicornes
through great groves there where it there-are elephants and unicorns
assez; et autres bestes sauvages assez. Hommes ne habitations
plenty and other beasts wild plenty Men nor dwellings
n'y a; et pour ce vous lairons de ce divers lieu sauvage
not-there are and for this you we-will-leave of this strange place wild
à conter; car il n'y a chose qui à ramentevoir face.
to tell for it not-there is thing which to mention may-make
Et vous conterons d'une estoire si comme vous pourrez oïr.
And to-you will-tell of-a story so as you will-be-able hear

Ci dit de la dite cité de Mien, qui a .ij. tours, l'une 124
Here tells of the said city of Mien which has two towers the-one
d'or et l'autre d'argent.
of-gold and the-other of-silver

Et quant l'en a chevauchie ces .xv. journées par si
And when one has ridden these fifteen day-journeys through so
desvoiables lieus, et que il convient aus cheminans porter
out-of-the-way places and that it behooves to-the travelers carry
leur vitaille, pour ce qu'il n'y a nulle habitation de gent,
their victuals for this that-it not-there is any habitation of people
si comme je vous ai dit, si treuve l'en adonc la maistre
so as I to-you have said so finds one then the master
cité de ceste province de Mien, laquel cité nommée est aussi
city of this province of Mien which city named is also

Amien, qui moult est grant et noble, et est le chief de
Mien which very is great and noble and is the head of
ceste province. Les genz sont idolastres et ont langages par
this province The people are idolaters and have languages by
eus; et sont au grant Kaan. Et en ceste cité a une si
themselves and are of-the great Khan And in this city there-is a so
riche chose et noble comme je vous dirai. Car il fu voir que
rich thing and noble as I to-you will-tell For it was true that
jadis ot en ceste cité un roy riche et puissant. Et quant
formerly there-was in this city a king rich and powerful And when
il vint à mort, si commanda que, sus sa tombe, fussent faites
he came to death so he-commanded that upon his tomb were made
deux tours: l'une d'or et l'autre d'argent, en tel maniere,
two towers the-one of-gold and the-other of-silver in such manner
si comme je vous dirai. Elles sont faites de pierre, et puis
so as I to-you will-tell They are made of stone and then
est couverte, l'une d'or, bien espes un doit; si que toute
is covered the-one with-gold fully thick a finger so that all
la tour semble d'or. En la maniere de celle d'or est l'autre
the tower seems of-gold In the manner of that of-gold is the-other
faite; si qu'elle semble aussi toute d'argent. Chascune tour
made so that-it seems also all of-silver Each tower
est bien grosse .x. pas, et grosse tant comme il convient
is fully thick ten paces and thick as-much as it befits
à la hautesse. Et dessus sont toutes reondes, tout plain
to the height And above they-are all round all full
le reont, de campanelles dorées, à celle d'or, et argentées,
the round with little-bells gilded on that of-gold and silvered
à celle d'argent. Et toutes fois que le vent fiert entre elles,
on that of-silver And all times that the wind strikes between them
si sonnent. Et les fist faire, ce roy, pour sa grandeur; car
so they-ring And them had made this king for his grandeur for

c'est une des plus belles choses du monde à veoir que
it-is one of-the most fine things of-the world to see that
ces tours. Si sont bien faites et belles et nobles et de
these towers So they-are well made and fine and noble and of
grant vaillance. Et quant le soleil les touche, si rendent
great worth And when the sun them touches so they-give-back
moult grant clarté et les voit l'en de moult loings. Et
very great brightness and them sees one from very far And
sachiez que le grant Kaan les conquesta en ceste maniere.
know that the great Khan them conquered in this manner

Il fu voir que, à la court du grant Kaan si avoit une
It was true that at the court of-the great Khan so there-was a
grant quantité de jugleours et d'entregeours; si leur dist
great quantity of jongleurs and of-jugglers so to-them he-said
un jour que il vouloit que il allassent conquester ceste dite
one day that he wished that they should-go conquer this said
province de Mien; et que il leur donra bonne aide et bon
province of Mien and that he to-them will-give good aid and good
chevetaine. Ceus respondirent que il le feroient volentiers.
captain They answered that they it would-do willingly
Si leur fist appareillier, le seigneur, tout ce qui à ost
So for-them he-had made-ready the lord all that which to host
affiert. Et leur donna chevetaine, et autre compaignie de
befits And to-them he-gave captain and other company of
genz d'armes; et se mistrent en la voie; et tant alerent
people of-arms and themselves they-put on the way and so-far they-went
qu'il vindrent en celle contrée et province de Mien. Et la
that-they came into that country and province of Mien And it
conquistrent toute. Et quant il trouverent en ceste cité ces
they-conquered all And when they found in this city these
deux tours d'argent et d'or que je vous ai dit, si se
two towers of-silver and of-gold which I to-you have said so themselves

merveillierent moult; et manderent au grant Kaan le fait;
they-marveled much and sent-word to-the great Khan the matter
et ce qu'il vouloit qu'il feissent de ces deux tours, pour
and that which-he wished that-they should-do with these two towers for
le grant avoir qui dessus estoit. Et le grant Kaan, qui savoit
the great wealth which above was And the great Khan who knew
bien que celui l'avoit fait faire pour s'ame, et pour ce que
well that he it-had had made for his-soul and for this that
l'en l'eust en remembrance de lui de puis sa mort, si
one him-should-have in remembrance of him from since his death so
dist qu'il ne vouloit pas qu'il fussent deffaites; mais qu'il
said that-he not wished at-all that-they were undone but that-they
les laissassent en la maniere qu'il estoient. Et ce ne fut pas
them should-leave in the manner that-they were And this not was at-all
merveille, pour ce que je vous di que nul Tatar du monde ne
marvel for this that I to-you tell that any Tartar of-the world not
touche mie volentiers nulle chose du monde qui touche mort.
touches at-all willingly any thing of-the world which touches dead

Il ont en ceste province olifans, et bues sauvages assez
They have in this province elephants and oxen wild plenty
et biaus cers, et dains et chevriaus; et d'autre maniere
and fine stags and fallow-deer and kids and of-other manner
de sauvagine ont assez.
of wild-game they-have plenty

Or vous ont conté de ceste province de Mien; si vous
Now to-you have told of this province of Mien so to-you
conterai ores d'une autre province qui est appellée Bangala,
I-will-tell now of-an other province which is called Bengal
si comme vous pourrez oïr par cy dessoubs.
so as you will-be-able hear by here below

Bengal, not yet conquered in 1290 though the Khan's armies had gone there, is a land of eunuchs, cotton, sugar, and oxen as tall as elephants. Kaugigu's king has three hundred wives, and its people tattoo their whole bodies with needles as a mark of nobility. In Aniu the women wear rich bracelets on their arms and legs, and the country breeds horses for India. In Toloman, a brown people good at arms, the dead are burned and their bones hung in high caverns, and gold and porcelain shells serve as money.

Ci dit de la province de Bangala. 125

Here tells of the province of Bengal

Bangala est une province vers midi, qui à

Bengal is a province toward south which at

.m.cc.lxxxx. ans de Crist, quant ledit messire

a-thousand-two-hundred-ninety years of Christ when the-said my-lord

Marc Pol estoit à la court du grant Kaan, encore ne l'avoit

Mark Pol was at the court of-the great Khan yet not it-had

conquestée; mais toutes fois y estoient, ses osts, alez pour

conquered but all times there were his hosts gone for

conquester la. Et sachiez que ceste province a langage par

to-conquer it And know that this province has language by

soi et sont tres mauvais ydolastres. Il sont assez prochain

itself and they-are very wicked idolaters They are quite near

d'Ynde. Il y a escoliers assez; si que tous les barons qui

of-India It there is eunuchs plenty so that all the barons who

les ont, si les ont de ceste province. Il ont bues qui

them have so them have from this province They have oxen which

sont si haut comme olifans, mais non pas si gros. Il vivent

are so high as elephants but not at-all so thick They live

de chars et de lait et de ris. Il ont coton de quoi il

from meats and from milk and from rice They have cotton of which they

font granz marchandises. Il ont espices, garingal, gingembre,
make great merchandises They have spices galingale ginger
sucre et de maintes autres espices assez. Et y viennent les
sugar and of many other spices plenty And there come the
Yndiens querre de leur escoilles que je vous ai dit; et esclaz
Indians seek of their eunuchs which I to-you have said and slaves
et esclavaz qu'assez ont prins d'autres provinces, contre
and slave-women whom-enough they-have taken from-other provinces against
qui il ont guerre, et les vendent aus Yndiens et aus
whom they have war and them sell to-the Indians and to-the
autres marchans qui les meinent vendre parmi le monde.
other merchants who them lead to-sell through the world

Autre chose n'a en ceste contrée qui à ramentevoir
Other thing not-there-is in this country which to mention
face; et pour ce nous en partirons et dirons d'une
may-make and for this we thence will-depart and will-tell of-an
autre province qui est appellée Cangigu.
other province which is called Kaugigu

126 Ci devise de la province de Cangigu.
Here describes of the province of Kaugigu

Cangigu est une province vers soleil levant. Il ont roy.
Kaugigu is a province toward sun rising They have king
Les gens sont idres et ont langage par euls. Il se
The people are idolaters and have language by themselves They themselves
rendirent au grant Kaan, et font treu chascun an. Et
rendered to-the great Khan and pay tribute each year And
si vous di que leur roy est si luxurieus que il a bien
so to-you I-tell that their king is so lustful that he has fully
.ccc. femmes. Car quant il ont aucune belle femme
three-hundred wives For when they have some fair woman
en la contrée: il la prent et l'espouse. L'en treuve en ceste
in the country he her takes and her-weds One finds in this

province or assez; et si ont aussi espiceries à grant
province gold plenty and so they-have also spices in great
foison. Mais il sont trop loing de mer; pour ce ne valent
plenty But they are too far from sea for this not are-worth
gaires leur marchandises, de quoi il y a grant marchie. Il
much their merchandises of which it there is great market They
ont olifans assez et autres bestes de pluseurs façons. Il
have elephants plenty and other beasts of several fashions They
ont venoison assez. Il vivent de chars et de lait et de
have venison plenty They live from meats and from milk and from
ris. Leur vin si est de ris et d'espice moult bonne. Toutes
rice Their wine so is of rice and of-spice very good All
les gens communement font euvre à l'aiguille, à lyons,
the people commonly make work with the-needle with lions
à dragons et à oyseaux, et a maintes autres diverses
with dragons and with birds and with many other diverse
choses. Et ce est fait en tel maniere que jamais ne deffera.
things And this is done in such manner that ever-more not it-will-undo
Et si ont ceste œuvre par la chiere, et par le col et par
And so they-have this work on the face and on the neck and on
le pis, et par les bras et par les mains, et par le ventre,
the breast and on the arms and on the hands and on the belly
et par tous le corps. Et ce font il par grant gentillesce. Et
and on all the body And this do they for great gentility And
ceus qui plus ont de ce labour si sont tenuz à plus beaus.
those who most have of this work so are held for more fine

Or vous lairons de ceste province et vous conterons
Now you we-will-leave of this province and to-you will-tell
d'une autre province qui a nom Aniu, qui est vers soleil
of-an other province which has name Aniu which is toward sun
levant.
rising

127 Ci dit de la province d'Aniu.

Here tells of the province of-Aniu

Aniu est une province vers soleil levant, et sont au grant

Aniu is a province toward sun rising and they-are of-the great

Kaan; et sont idolastres. Il vivent de bestaus et du

Khan and are idolaters They live from livestock and from-the

proufit de la terre. Il ont langage par euls. Les dames

profit of the earth They have language by themselves The ladies

portent aus jambes et aus bras braceus d'or et d'argent de

wear on-the legs and on-the arms bracelets of-gold and of-silver of

grant vaillance; et les hommes les portent de greignor vaillance

great worth and the men them wear of greater worth

que les femmes. Il ont chevauz assez de quoi il vendent

than the women They have horses plenty of which they sell

aus Yndiens grandisme quantité, de quoi il font grandismes

to-the Indians very-great quantity of which they make very-great

marchandises. Il ont encore grandisme quantité de bugles et

merchandises They have further very-great quantity of buffaloes and

de bues pour ce que il ont trop bons lieus et de bonnes

of oxen for this that they have very good places and of good

pastures. Il ont de toutes choses dont l'en doit vivre assez.

pastures They have of all things from-which one must live plenty

Et sachiez que de cest Aniu jusques à Cangigu, qui derriere

And know that from this Aniu as-far-as to Kaugigu which behind

est, si a .xv. journées; de Cangigu jusques à Bangala,

is so there-are fifteen day-journeys from Kaugigu as-far-as to Bengal

qui est tierce province en arrieres, si a .xxx. journées.

which is third province in back so there-are thirty day-journeys

Or nous partirons de Aniu et irons à une autre
province qui est loing de ceste, bien .viij. journées, toutes
fois vers soleil levant.

Ci devise de la province de Tholoman. 128

Tholoman est une province vers levant. Les gens sont
idolastres et ont langage par eus et sont au grant
Kaan. Il sont moult belles genz, mais ne sont pas bien
blanches, mais brunes gens. Il sont bons genz d'armes. Il
ont citez assez et chasteaus à grant habondance, et grans
montaignes et en fors lieus. Et quant il muerent, il
font ardoir les corps, et prennent les os et les mucent
en petites arches; puis les metent en grans montaignes et
hautes et les metent en grans cavernes et les pendent
en tel maniere que beste ne homme n'y puet toucher.

En y treuve or assez. La monnoie que il despendent
est de pourcelainne en tel maniere comme je vous ai

dit. Et aussi toutes les provinces, c'est-à-dire Bangala et
said And also all the provinces that-is-to-say Bengal and
Cangigu et Aniu, despendent pourcelaines et or. Il y
Kaugigu and Aniu spend porcelain-shells and gold It there
a marcheans qui sont moult riches et portent moult de
is merchants who are very rich and carry much of
marchandise. Il vivent de char et de lait et de ris,
merchandise They live from meat and from milk and from rice
et font leur vins de poison de ris et d'espices moult bons.
and make their wines of drink of rice and of-spices very good

Or vous lairons de ceste province, qui n'y a autre
Now you we-will-leave of this province for not-there is other
chose qui à ramentevoir face. Si vous conterai d'une
thing which to mention may-make So to-you I-will-tell of-an
autre province qui a nom Cuigiu vers levant.
other province which has name Kweichow toward east

From Toloman a river runs twelve days through Kweichow to the city of Fungul, where the people weave cloth from bark and use the Khan's paper money. Lions are so many that no one can sleep outside, and they swim out to boats on the river; but travelers take two great dogs that bite the lion's hindquarters until it makes for a wood to set its back against a tree, and as it goes the men shoot it with arrows. Twelve more days bring one back to Sindafu, seventy to a city the book has already visited, and four more to Cacanfu in Cathay, a noble city of silk and trade.

Ci dit de la province de Cuguy. 129

Here tells of the province of Kweichow

Cuigiu est une province vers levant. Et quant on se

Kweichow is a province toward east And when one himself

part de Tholoman si l'en chevauche dessus un flun .xii.

departs from Toloman so one rides upon a river twelve

journées là où l'en treuve villes et chasteaus assez. Mais

day-journeys there where one finds towns and castles plenty But

autres choses n'y a qui à ramentevoir face. Et quant

other things not-there is which to mention may-make And when

on chevauche ces .xii. journées sus ce flun, adonc si treuve

one rides these twelve day-journeys upon this river then so finds

l'en une cité qui a nom Fungul, qui moult est grant

one a city which has name Fungul which very is great

et noble. Et sont idolastres et sont au grant Kaan.

and noble And they-are idolaters and are of-the great Khan

Il vivent de marchandises et d'ars. Et sachiez que il

They live from merchandises and from-crafts And know that they

font draps d'escorces d'arbres qui sont moult biaus à vestir

make cloths of-barks of-trees which are very fine to wear

l'esté. Il sont bon gent d'armes et ont monnoie de

the-summer They are good people of-arms and have money of

chartains. Et sachiez que desormais sommes es terres où
charters And know that henceforth we-are in-the lands where
l'en despent le charter du grant Kaan. Il y a tant de
one spends the charter of-the great Khan It there is so-many of
lyons que nul homs ne puet dormir de nuit hors de sa
lions that any man not can sleep by night outside of his
maison. Et encore quant l'en vait par nuit sus ce flun, se
house And further when one goes by night upon this river if
l'en ne s'esloingne bien de la rive, si vont les lyons avous
one not himself-distances well from the bank so go the lions swimming
jusques au vessiau, et menjuent ceus qu'il puent atraper.
as-far-as to-the vessel and eat those whom-they can catch
Et se ne fust une aide que les hommes ont, nus ne
And if not were an aid which the men have anyone not
porroit cheminer par ceste province pour la grant quantité
could travel through this province for the great quantity
des lyons qu'il y a, qui sont moult grans et moult fiers.
of-the lions that-it there is which are very great and very fierce
Il a en ceste province moult grans chiens et fiers et
It there-is in this province very great dogs and fierce and
ont tant de hardement que quant il sont deux ensemble il
have so-much of boldness that when they are two together they
assaillent le lyon, si que l'omme toute foiz que il cheminent
assail the lion so that the-man all times that they travel
si en mainent deux; sique, quant il treuvent le lyon, si li
so thereof lead two so-that when they find the lion so to-him
cueurent sus moult hardiement. Et le lyon se deffent contre
they-run upon very boldly And the lion himself defends against
les chiens; mais il se sevent trop bien garder que le lyon
the dogs but they themselves know very well guard that the lion
ne les touche; et il le vont toute foiz costiant et ullant et
not them touch and they him go all times flanking and howling and

mordant lui en la queue, ou en la cuisse, ou là où il le
biting him on the tail or on the thigh or there where they him
pueent atraper. Et le lyon ne fait nul semblant; mais aucune
can catch And the lion not makes any semblance but some
foiz se tourne vers les chiens moult fierement, que se il
time himself turns toward the dogs very fiercely so-that if he
les atrapoit il les occirroit; mais il s'en sevent moult
them caught he them would-kill but they themselves-thence know very
bien garder. Et ainsi va le lyon fuiant la noise des chiens
well guard And thus goes the lion fleeing the noise of-the dogs
pour entrer en un bois pour trouver arbre où apuier soi,
for to-enter into a wood for to-find tree where to-lean himself
à ce que les chiens ne le puissent venir derriere pour faire
to this that the dogs not him may come behind for to-do
ennuy. Et quant les hommes voient que le lyon se met à
harm And when the men see that the lion himself puts to
la voie, si metent mains aus ars (il sont moult bon archier),
the way so they-put hands to-the bows they are very good archers
et le navrent si de leurs saietes, si que il chiet à la terre
and him wound so with their arrows so that he falls to the earth
mort. Et ainsi se delivrent les cheminans des lyons.
dead And thus themselves deliver the travelers from-the lions

Il ont soie assez et autres marchandises, lesquelles l'en
They have silk plenty and other merchandises which one
porte çà et là et sus et jus par cest flun en pluseurs
carries here and there and up and down by this river into several
pars. Et encore l'en chevauche sus ce flun .xij. journées
parts And further one rides upon this river twelve day-journeys
trouvant toutes foiz citez assez; et sont idolastres et sont
finding all times cities plenty and they-are idolaters and are
au grant Kaan. Et si ont leur monnoie de chartains, et
of-the great Khan And so they-have their money of charters and

si vivent de marchandises et d'ars. Et il y a hommes
so live from merchandises and from-crafts And it there is men
d'armes assez. Et quant l'en a chevauchie .xij. journées, si
of-arms plenty And when one has ridden twelve day-journeys so
treuve l'en la cité de Syndifu de quoi cest livre parole ci
finds one the city of Sindafu of which this book speaks here
arrieres. Et de Syndifu se part l'en, et chevauche l'en
back And from Sindafu himself departs one and rides one
bien .lxx. journées par provinces et par citez et par
fully seventy day-journeys through provinces and through cities and through
chasteaus esquielz nous avons esté; et est escript en ce
castles in-which we have been and it-is written in this
notre livre tout par ordre appertement. Et au chief de ces
our book all by order openly And at-the end of these
.lxx. journées treuve l'en Cuyguy là où nous avons esté.
seventy day-journeys finds one Zhuozhou there where we have been
Et de Cuyguy chevauche l'en .iiij. journées trouvant citez et
And from Zhuozhou rides one four day-journeys finding cities and
chasteaus assez. Les genz sont de grans marchandises et de
castles plenty The people are of great merchandises and of
grans ars; et sont idolastres et ont monnoie de chartains du
great crafts and are idolaters and have money of charters of-the
grant Kaan, leur seigneur. Et au chief de ces .iiij. journées,
great Khan their lord And at-the end of these four day-journeys
si treuve l'en la cité de Cacanfu qui est vers midi. Et est de
so finds one the city of Cacanfu which is toward south And it-is of
la province de Catay, si comme vous pourrez oïr ci dessous.
the province of Cathay so as you will-be-able hear here below

Ci dit de la cité de Cacanfu. 130

Here tells of the city of Cacanfu

Cacanfu est une cité noble, et sont idolastres, et font

Cacanfu is a city noble and they-are idolaters and make

ardoir les mors; et ont monnoie de chartains et vivent d'ars

burn the dead and have money of charters and live from-crafts

et de marchandises; car il ont soie assez, de quoy il font

and from merchandises for they have silk plenty of which they make

draps dorés, et de soie, et de cendaus en grant quantité. Et si

cloths gilded and of silk and of sendals in great quantity And so

y a cités et chasteaus assez, et sont de grant seigneurie.

there are cities and castles plenty and they-are of great lordship

Or nous partirons d'ici, et chevaucherons trois journées

Now we will-depart from-here and will-ride three day-journeys

avant vers midi. Et adonc si treuve l'en une cité qui a

forward toward south And then so finds one a city which has

nom Cianglu, de quoi nous vous conterons ci-dessoubs.

name Changlu of which we to-you will-tell here-below

Changlu makes fine white salt by washing brackish earth and boiling the water. Tsinanfu stands on a great river that carries silk and spices. Tondinfu, once a kingdom and the noblest city of these parts, rules eleven imperial cities. In 1273 the Khan's baron Litan Sangon, sent with eighty thousand horsemen to guard it, persuaded its great men to revolt and became their leader; the Khan sent Aguil and Mongotai with a hundred thousand horsemen, who defeated him and put the leaders to death, but pardoned the common people.

131 Ci dit de la cité de Cianglu.

Here tells of the city of Changlu

Cianglu est encore une moult grant cité vers midi; et

Changlu is further a very great city toward south and

est au grant Kaan, et de la province de Catay. Leur

is of-the great Khan and of the province of Cathay Their

monnoie est de chartin; et sont idolastres et font ardoir

money is of charter and they-are idolaters and make burn

les corps mors. Et sachiez que l'en fait sel en ceste cité

the bodies dead And know that one makes salt in this city

en grant quantité; et vous dirai comment.

in great quantity and to-you I-will-tell how

Il prennent une maniere de terre qui est moult saumastre

They take a manner of earth which is very brackish

et en font grans mons. Et dessus cel mont getent yaue

and thereof make great mounds And upon that mound they-throw water

assez, tant qu'elle va jusques au fons; et puis prennent et

plenty until it goes as-far-as to-the bottom and then they-take and

cueillent cele yaue qui ist de celle terre, et la metent en

gather that water which issues from that earth and it put in

grans chaudieres de fer, et la font bien boulir, et puis la

great cauldrons of iron and it make well boil and then it

laissent refroidier, et devient sel moult bel et blanc. Mais il
let cool and it-becomes salt very fine and white But it
est menu. Et porte l'en de ce sel par maintes provinces
is fine-grained And carries one of this salt through many provinces
environ, de quoi il traient grant avoir, et grant proufit.
around of which they draw great wealth and great profit

Autre chose n'y a qui à ramentevoir face; et pour
Other thing not-there is which to mention may-make and for
ce irons avant .v. journées; si treuve l'en une cité qui a
this we-will-go forward five day-journeys so finds one a city which has
nom Cinangli, de quoy nous vous conterons ci dessoubs.
name Tsinanfu of which we to-you will-tell here below

Ci dit de la cité de Cinangli. 132
Here tells of the city of Tsinanfu

Cinangli est une cité du Catay vers midi, et est au grant
Tsinanfu is a city of-the Cathay toward south and is of-the great
Kaan. Et sont idolastres et ont monnoie de chartain; et court
Khan And they-are idolaters and have money of charter and runs
parmi ceste cité un grant flun et large, par lequel l'en porte
through this city a great river and wide by which one carries
amont et aval grant quantité de marchandises de soie et
upstream and downstream great quantity of merchandises of silk and
d'espicerie, et d'autres espiceries et d'autres chieres choses assez.
of-spicery and of-other spiceries and of-other dear things plenty

Or nous partirons de Cinangli [et vous conterons d'une
Now we will-depart from Tsinanfu and to-you will-tell of-an
autre cité qui est loing de Cinangli] .vi. journées vers
other city which is far from Tsinanfu six day-journeys toward
midi, laquelle cité est nommée Cundinfu.
south which city is named Tondinfu

133 Ci dist de la cité de Cundinfu.

Here tells of the city of Tondinfu

Quant l'en a chevauchie cinq journées partant de

When one has ridden five day-journeys departing from

Cinangli vers midi, et toutes foiz trouvant cités et

Tsinanfu toward south and all times finding cities and

chasteaux assez, de granz nobleces et de granz faiz.

castles plenty of great nobilities and of great deeds

Et sont idolastres et ardent leurs mors, et sont au

And they-are idolaters and burn their dead and are of-the

grant Kaan, et ont monnoie de charter, et vivent de

great Khan and have money of charter and live from

marchandises et d'ars, et ont toutes choses de vivre en

merchandises and from-crafts and have all things of living in

grant habondance. Mais il n'y a chose qui à mentevoir

great abundance But it not-there is thing which to mention

face. Et pour ce vous dirons de la cité de Cundinfu.

may-make And for this to-you we-will-tell of the city of Tondinfu

Et sachiez que Cundinfu est une grandisme cité; et

And know that Tondinfu is a very-great city and

jadis avant estoit royaumes et grans; mais le grant Kaan la

formerly before it-was kingdom and great but the great Khan it

conquesta par forces d'armes. Mais toutes foiz vous di qu'elle

conquered by forces of-arms But all times to-you I-tell that-it

est la plus noble cité qui soit en toutes ces contrées. Il y

is the most noble city which be in all these countries It there

a grandismes marcheans qui font grans marchandises. Il

is very-great merchants who make great merchandises They

ont si grant habondance de soie que c'est grant merveille. Et

have so great abundance of silk that it-is great marvel And

si ont de moult beaus jardins et delitables et plains de

so they-have of very fine gardens and delightful and full of

granz fruiz. Et sachiez que ceste cité de Cundinfu a soubs
great fruits And know that this city of Tondinfu has under
sa seigneurie .xj. emperiaus citez de grant vaillance, et de
its lordship eleven imperial cities of great worth and of
grans marchandises et de granz proufit; car il ont soie
great merchandises and of great profit for they have silk
outre mesure. Et sachiez que à .m.cc. et .lxxiij.
beyond measure And know that at a-thousand-two-hundred and seventy-three
(1273) ans de Crist le grant Kaan si avoit envoié un sien
1273 years of Christ the great Khan so had sent a his
baron qui avoit nom Liytan Sangon, avec bien quatre vins
baron who had name Litan Sangon with fully four score
mille hommes à cheval en ceste cité et en la province,
thousand men on horse into this city and into the province
pour garder la entour. [Et quant le chevetaine atout son ost
for to-guard it around And when the captain with-all his host
ot auques demourés là entour], si pensa comme desloial
had somewhat dwelt there around so he-thought as disloyal
et traitre, et donna conseil aus granz hommes [de ceste
and traitor and gave counsel to-the great men of this
province] de reveler eus contre le grant Kaan. Et ainssi
province of rebelling themselves against the great Khan And thus
le firent il; car il se revelerent contre leur seigneur
it did they for they themselves rebelled against their lord
et ne li vouloient de riens obeir. Et firent chevetaine
and not to-him wished in anything to-obey And they-made captain
cestui dit Liytan qui estoit là venuz de par leur seigneur
this said Litan who was there come from by their lord
pour les garder et sauver. Et quant le grant Kaan sot ce,
for them to-guard and save And when the great Khan knew this
si envoia maintenant deux siens barons, dont il nommoit,
so he-sent at-once two his barons whom he named

l'un Eguil, et l'autre Mongatay. Et lor donna cent
the-one Aguil and the-other Mongotai And to-them he-gave hundred
mille hommes à cheval et grant quantité d'hommes à
thousand men on horse and great quantity of-men on
pié. Mais tel fu l'aventure que sachiez que ces .ij. barons
foot But such was the-adventure that know that these two barons
se combatirent contre Liytan, qui estoit revelez, et
themselves fought against Litan who was rebelled and
encontre touz ceus qui, de sa part, s'estoient assemblés
against all those who on his part themselves-were assembled
de la province là environ, qui furent bien touz plus de
from the province there around who were fully all more than
cent mille hommes à cheval, et grant quantité de gent
hundred thousand men on horse and great quantity of people
à pié. Mais toutes voies fut, Liytan, tous desconfiz et
on foot But all the-same was Litan all defeated and
li sien en la bataille. Et ainssi orent les deux barons, que
the his in the battle And thus had the two barons whom
le seigneur ot envoiez, la victoire. Et quant le grant Kaan
the lord had sent the victory And when the great Khan
sot ce, si en fu moult à son gré, et commanda que
knew this so thereof was very at his liking and commanded that
tuit cil qui avoient revelé, et donné le conseil du reveler,
all those who had rebelled and given the counsel of-the rebelling
fussent mis tuit à mort cruelement, et autres menues genz
were put all to death cruelly and other small people
fust pardonné. Et ainsi fu que touz les granz chiefs de
were pardoned And thus it-was that all the great heads of
cest fait firent, les deux barons, touz morir de male mort;
this deed had the two barons all die of evil death

et les autres menues genz orent tuit pardon. Et depuis
and the other small people had all pardon And since
en avant, furent il bons et loiaus à leur seigneur.
on forward were they good and loyal to their lord
Or nous partirons de ceste matiere, puis que nous
Now we will-depart from this matter since that we
l'avons à vous contée; et vous conterai d'une autre contrée
it-have to you told and to-you I-will-tell of-an other country
qui est vers midi, qui a nom Singuy matu.
which is toward south which has name Singuy matu

XIV · SINGUY MATU AND THE ROAD TO THE KARAMORAN

At Singuy Matu the people divide a great river into two, one flowing toward Manzi and one toward Cathay, and so many ships carry goods on them that it is a marvel. Linju is rich in game, and its ships are larger than the others. Pinju stands at the entry to the great province of Manzi, and Siju has broad fields of wheat. Three days on lies the river Karamoran, over a mile wide, where fifteen thousand of the Khan's ships wait to carry his armies to the isles, with Koiganju and Caiju facing each other across it.

Ci devise de la noble cité de Singuy matu. 134
Here describes of the noble city of Singuy matu
Et quant l'en se part de Cundinfu et chevauche
And when one himself departs from Tondinfu and rides
l'en trois journées vers midi, toutes foiz trouvant villes
one three day-journeys toward south all times finding towns
et chasteaus assez, qui sont nobles et grans, de grans
and castles plenty which are noble and great of great

marchandises et de grans ars; et si y a venoisons assez
merchandises and of great crafts and so there are venisons plenty
de toutes manieres; et si ont toutes choses à grant planté.
of all manners and so they-have all things in great plenty

Quant l'en a chevauchie ces trois journées, adonc treuve
When one has ridden these three day-journeys then finds
l'en la noble cité de Cinguy matu, qui moult est belle
one the noble city of Singuy matu which very is fair
et riche et de grans marchandises et de grans ars. Il
and rich and of great merchandises and of great crafts They
sont idolastres et sont au grant Kaan; et si ont monnoie
are idolaters and are of-the great Khan and so have money
de charter. Et si vous di que il ont un flun duquel
of charter And so to-you I-tell that they have a river from-which
il ont grant proufit, et vous dirai comment.
they have great profit and to-you I-will-tell how

Il est voir que ce grant flun vient de vers midi jusques à
It is true that this great river comes from toward south as-far-as to
ceste dite cité de Cinguymatu. Et les genz de la cité, si ont
this said city of Singuymatu And the people of the city so have
fait deux fluns de celui grant flun; car il font l'une moitié
made two rivers of that great river for they make the-one half
aler vers levant, et l'autre moitié vers ponent. C'est que
go toward east and the-other half toward west This-is that
l'un flun va au Mangi, et l'autre par le Catay. Et si
the-one river goes to-the Manzi and the-other through the Cathay And so
vous dirai en vérité qu'en ceste cité a si grant quantité
to-you I-will-tell in truth that-in this city there-is so great quantity
de navie, qu'il n'est nul qui ne le veist, et l'oïst dire qui
of shipping that-there not-is anyone who not it saw and it-heard tell who
le peust croire. Et si portent au Manzi et au Catay, ces
it could believe And so carry to-the Manzi and to-the Cathay these

navies, si grant quantité de marchandises que c'est merveille.
shippings so great quantity of merchandises that it-is marvel
Et puis quant il s'en reviennent, si retournent
And then when they themselves-thence come-back so they-return
chargiez d'autres marchandises. Si que c'est merveille des
laden with-other merchandises So that it-is marvel of-the
marchandises qui vont et viennent par ces .ij. fluns.
merchandises which go and come by these two rivers

Or vous conterai d'une province qui est vers midi, qui
Now to-you I-will-tell of-a province which is toward south which
a nom Linguy.
has name Linju

Ci dist de la cité de Linguy. 135
Here tells of the city of Linju

Quant l'en est parti de la cité de Cinguymatu, si
When one is departed from the city of Singuymatu so
chevauche l'en .viij. journées vers midi, trouvant toutes fois
rides one eight day-journeys toward south finding all times
villes et chasteaus assez, qui moult sont belles et grandes
towns and castles plenty which very are fair and great
et riches, de grans marchandises et de grans ars. Et
and rich of great merchandises and of great crafts And
font ardoir les corps mors; et sont au grant Kaan; et
they-make burn the bodies dead and are of-the great Khan and
ont monnoie de charter. Et au chief de ces .viij. journées
have money of charter And at-the end of these eight day-journeys
treuve l'en la cité de Linguy; et est aussi appellée comme
finds one the city of Linju and it-is also called as
la province; et est chief du règne. Et est noble cité
the province and is head of-the realm And it-is noble city
et riche et sont bons hommes d'armes; et font grans
and rich and they-are good men of-arms and make great

marcheandises et grans ars. Il ont venoisons et bestes et
merchandises and great crafts They have venisons and beasts and
oiseaus en grant habondance. Et si ont de toutes choses
birds in great abundance And so they-have of all things
de vivre en grant quantité. Elle est sus le flun que je vous
of living in great quantity It is upon the river which I to-you
ai dit dessus. Et si ont navies assez et sont greigneurs
have said above And so they-have shippings plenty and they-are greater
que les autres, esquelles l'en porte chieres marchandises assez.
than the others in-which one carries dear merchandises plenty

Or vous lairons de cette province et de ceste cité; si
Now you we-will-leave of this province and of this city so
vous conterons autres novités ci avant.
to-you we-will-tell other novelties here forward

136 Ci dist de la cité de Piguy.
Here tells of the city of Pinju

Et quant l'en se part de la cité de Linguy dessus dit,
And when one himself departs from the city of Linju above said
si chevauche l'en trois journées vers midi, et toutes foiz
so rides one three day-journeys toward south and all times
trouvant cités et chasteaus assez, qui sont bons et riches; et
finding cities and castles plenty which are good and rich and
sont encore du Catay. Et sont idolastres; et font ardoir
they-are still of-the Cathay And they-are idolaters and make burn
leurs cors mors; et sont au grant Kaan; et ont monnoie
their bodies dead and are of-the great Khan and have money
de charter: celle du grant seigneur, c'est le grant Kaan,
of charter that of-the great lord this-is the great Khan
qui est tout. Et si ont la meilleur venoison de bestes et
who is all And so they-have the best venison of beasts and
d'oisiaus qui soit ou monde; et si ont grant habondance
of-birds which be in-the world and so have great abundance

de toute choses de vivre. Et au chief de ces trois journées
of all things of living And at-the end of these three day-journeys
treuve l'en la cité de Piguy, qui moult est grant et noble,
finds one the city of Pinju which very is great and noble
et riche, et de grans marcheandises et de grans ars. Et si
and rich and of great merchandises and of great crafts And so
ont soie en grant habondance. Ceste cité est en l'entrée
they-have silk in great abundance This city is at the-entrance
de la grant province de Mangi. Et a en ceste cité, tres
of the great province of Manzi And there-is in this city very
grant multitude de marchans de grans marchandises, et les
great multitude of merchants of great merchandises and them
portent au Mangi, et par pluseurs citez et chasteaus.
carry to-the Manzi and through several cities and castles
Ceste cité rent grant proufit au grant Kaan.
This city renders great profit to-the great Khan

Il n'y a autre chose qui à mentevoir face; et pour
It not-there is other thing which to mention may-make and for
ce nous en partirons et vous dirons d'une autre cité
this we thence will-depart and to-you will-tell of-an other city
qui est appellée Siguy, qui est encore à midi.
which is called Siju which is further toward south

Ci dit de la cité de Siguy. 137
Here tells of the city of Siju

Et quant l'en se part de la cité de Piguy, si
And when one himself departs from the city of Pinju so
chevauche l'en deux journées vers midi par moult belles
rides one two day-journeys toward south through very fine
contrées et planteureuses de touz biens, là où il a
countries and plentiful of all goods there where it there-are
venoisons assez de toutes manieres de bestes et d'oiseaus. Et
venisons plenty of all manners of beasts and of-birds And

au chief de deux journées si treuve l'en la cité de Siguy
at-the end of two day-journeys so finds one the city of Siju
qui moult est grant et riche et noble de marchandises
which very is great and rich and noble of merchandises
et d'ars. Les genz sont idolastres et font ardoir les corps
and of-crafts The people are idolaters and make burn the bodies
mors. Leur monnoie est de charter; et sont au grant
dead Their money is of charter and they-are of-the great
Kaan. Elle a trop grans champs et belles plaines de qui
Khan It has very great fields and fine plains from which
il ont grant habondance de froument et d'autres blés. Mais
they have great abundance of wheat and of-other grains But
autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Et pour ce nous
other thing not-there is which to tell may-make And for this we
en partirons et vous conterons des autres terres avant.
thence will-depart and to-you will-tell of-the other lands forward
Et quant l'en est parti de ceste cité de Siguy, si
And when one is departed from this city of Siju so
chevauche l'en trois journées vers midi, trouvant toutes fois
rides one three day-journeys toward south finding all times
belles contrées et beaus chasteaus et beaus casaus, et belles
fine countries and fine castles and fine hamlets and fine
gaagneries de terres et de champs. Et si y a venoison assez
tillages of lands and of fields And so there is venison plenty
et habondance de froment et de touz blez. Et sont ydres,
and abundance of wheat and of all grains And they-are idolaters
et sont au grant Kaan. Et au chief de ces trois journées
and are of-the great Khan And at-the end of these three day-journeys
treuve l'en le grant flun de Caramoran, qui vient de la terre
finds one the great river of Karamoran which comes from the land
Prestre Jehan. Et est moult grant et large plus d'une mille.
(of-)Prester John And it-is very great and wide more than-a mile

Et si est moult parfont que grans nes y porroient nagier
And so it-is very deep that great ships there could sail
dedens. Il y a moult de poissons et de moult grans.
within It there is many of fishes and of very great-ones
Sachiez qu'il a bien en cest flun .xv. mille nes qui toutes
Know that-it there-is fully on this river fifteen thousand ships which all
sont au grant Kaan, pour porter ses osts es illes d'Ynde de
are of-the great Khan for to-carry his hosts to-the isles of-India of
mer, quant il y a besoing; car la mer est pres à cest lieu
sea when it there is need for the sea is near to this place
une seule journée. Et si veult bien chascune nef, l'une parmi
a single day-journey And so wishes well each ship the-one through
l'autre .xx. mariniers; et porte bien chascune .xv. chevaus, et
the-other twenty mariners and carries fully each fifteen horses and
leurs hommes, et leur vitaille et leurs armes et leur hernois.
their men and their victuals and their arms and their harness
Et ce flun a une petite cité de çà, et l'autre de là; l'une
And this river has a little city of here and the-other of there the-one
encontre de l'autre. L'une a nom Coguiganguy et l'autre
opposite to the-other The-one has name Koiganju and the-other
Caguy; l'une est grant et l'autre petite. Et quant l'en a passé
Caiju the-one is great and the-other small And when one has crossed
ce flun, si entre l'en adonc en la grant province de Magy. Et
this river so enters one then into the great province of Manzi And
vous conterai comment ceste province de Magi fu conquestée
to-you I-will-tell how this province of Manzi was conquered
par le grant Kaan, si comme vous pourrez entendre ci-dessouz.
by the great Khan so as you will-be-able understand here-below

Facfur, king of Manzi, was so rich and powerful that only the Khan was greater, but he cared only for women and alms, and his people knew nothing of arms, though their cities were ringed with wide moats. He had read in the stars that only a man with a hundred eyes could take his kingdom, and in 1268 the Khan sent his baron Bayan, called Hundred Eyes. Bayan took twelve cities by force; the king fled to the isles, and the queen, hearing the general's name, surrendered Quinsai and the kingdom. She was honored at the Khan's court; the king died on the isles.

138 Comment le grant Kaan conquesta la province de Mangi.

How the great Khan conquered the province of Manzi

Il fu voir que de la grant province de Manzi estoit roys

It was true that of the great province of Manzi was king

et sires uns que l'en nommoit Facfur, qui moult estoit grant

and lord one whom one named Facfur who very was great

roys et puissans de tresor et de gent et de terre; si que

king and powerful of treasure and of people and of land so that

poi avoit au monde nul greigneur de lui, fors le grant

little there-was in-the world any greater than him except the great

Kaan. Mais sachiez qu'il n'estoient mie une gent d'armes;

Khan But know that-they not-were at-all a people of-arms

car tout leur delit n'estoit autre chose que des fames, et

for all their delight not-was other thing than of-the women and

proprement le roi sur tous; si qu'il n'avoit d'autre chose

especially the king above all so that-he not-had of-other thing

cure fors des fames, et de faire bien aus povres genz. Et

care except of-the women and of doing good to-the poor people And

en toute sa province, sachiez qu'il n'y avoit nul cheval,

in all his province know that-it not-there was any horse

ne il n'estoient mie coustumier de bataille, ne d'armes,

nor they not-were at-all accustomed to battle nor to-arms

ne d'aler en ost; car ceste province de Mangi est moult
nor of-going on host for this province of Manzi is very
tres fort lieu; pour ce que toutes les cités sont avironnées
very strong place for this that all the cities are surrounded
d'yaues plus larges d'une arbaleste et moult parfonde. Si
with-waters more wide than-a crossbow-shot and very deep So
que se les genz eussent été hommes d'armes, jamais ne
that if the people had been men of-arms ever-more not
l'eussent perdue; mais pour ce qu'il ne l'estoient mie
it-they-would-have lost but for this that-they not it-were at-all
la perdirent il. Car en toute leur cité l'en entre par pont.
it lost they For in all their city one enters by bridge

Or avint que au temps mil .cc.lxviij. (1268)
Now it-happened that at-the time a-thousand two-hundred-sixty-eight 1268
de l'incarnation de Crist, le grant Kaan, qui orendroit regne,
of the-incarnation of Christ the great Khan who now reigns
s'y establi et commanda un sien baron qui avoit nom
himself-there established and commanded a his baron who had name
Baian Cincsan, qui vaut à dire: Baian cent iex. Et sachiez
Bayan Chincsan which is-worth to say Bayan hundred eyes And know
que le roy de Mangy trouvoit en son astronomie qu'il ne
that the king of Manzi found in his astronomy that-he not
povoit perdre son royaume, fors par un homme qui eust
could lose his kingdom except by a man who had
.C. iex; si que il se tenoit aseur pour ce; car il povoit
a-hundred eyes so that he himself held secure for this for he could
penser nul homme de nulle nature qui eust .c. iex. Mais
think no man of any nature who had a-hundred eyes But
il se déçut en ce qu'il ne veoit pas le nom de cestui.
he himself deceived in this that-he not saw at-all the name of this-one

Cestui Baian avoit grant multitude de genz que le grant
This Bayan had great multitude of people whom the great
Kaan li donna, et proprement à cheval et à pié. Aussi
Khan to-him gave and especially on horse and on foot So
s'en vint à Manzi; puis ot grant quantité de nes
himself-thence he-came to Manzi then he-had great quantity of ships
pour porter les genz à cheval et à pié quant mestier
for to-carry the people on horse and on foot when need
estoit. Et quant il fu venu atout son ost en la terre du
was And when he was come with-all his host into the land of-the
Manzi: ce est en ceste cité de Coguiganguy, là où nous
Manzi this is at this city of Koiganju there where we
sommes ores, de laquelle nous vous conterons tout avant, si
are now of which we to-you will-tell all first so
leur dist que il se rendissent au grant Kaan son
to-them he-said that they themselves should-render to-the great Khan his
seigneur. Et ceus li respondirent qu'il n'en feroient
lord And those to-him answered that-they not-thereof would-do
rien. Et quant Baian vit ce, si ala avant et trouva une
anything And when Bayan saw this so he-went forward and found an
autre cité, et encore ne se voult rendre. Et encore ala
other city and still not itself wished to-render And further he-went
avant, et ce faisoit il, pour ce qu'il savoit que le grant
forward and this did he for this that-he knew that the great
Kaan li envoiroit apres lui un autre moult grant ost.
Khan to-him would-send after him an other very great host

Et que vous en dirai je? sachiez que il ala à .v. citez;
And what you thereof will-tell I know that he went to five cities
ne il ne prist nulle, por ce que il ne se vouloient
nor he not took any for this that they not themselves wished
combattre ou il ne se vouloient rendre. Or avint que
to-fight or they not themselves wished to-render Now it-happened that

la .vje. cité fu prise à force; et puis il prist une autre; et
the sixth city was taken by force and then he took an other and
puis la tierce, et puis la quarte. Si que il prist l'une apres
then the third and then the fourth So that he took the-one after
l'autre par force .xij. citez. Et quant il ot pris tant de citez
the-other by force twelve cities And when he had taken so-many of cities
comme je vous di, si s'en ala à la maistre cité du
as I to-you tell so himself-thence he-went to the master city of-the
regne qui Quinsay a à nom, là où le roy et la royne
realm which Quinsai has as name there where the king and the queen
estoient. Et quant le roy vit Baian atout si grant ost, si
were And when the king saw Bayan with-all so great host so
ot doubte, comme celui qui n'estoit pas coustumiers de ce
he-had fear as one who not-was at-all accustomed of this
veoir. Si entra en mille nefs avec maintes genz avec lui,
to-see So he-entered into a-thousand ships with many people with him
et s'en parti; et s'enfui es illes de la mer occeanne
and himself-thence departed and himself-fled to-the isles of the sea ocean
en Ynde. Et la royne qui remest en la cité se pourchaçoit
in India And the queen who remained in the city herself strove
de deffendre à son povoir comme vaillante dame. Or demanda
to defend to her power as valiant lady Now asked
la dame aus astronomiens qui gaaneroit, et comment il
the lady of-the astrologers who would-win and how he
avoit nom? Et l'en dist qu'il avoit nom Baian cent iex.
had name And one said that-he had name Bayan hundred eyes
Tantost comme la royne ouy qu'il avoit nom ainssi, tantôt
As-soon as the queen heard that-he had name thus at-once
li remembra qu'il lui toudroit son royaume. Si se
to-her remembered that-he from-her would-take-away her kingdom So herself
rendi audit Baian, et puis tout son royaume et touz les
she-rendered to-the-said Bayan and then all her kingdom and all the

autres cités et chasteaus que onques n'y furent deffense.
other cities and castles so-that ever not-there were defense
Et certes ce fu bien grant conquest, car ou monde
And certainly this was well great conquest for in-the world
n'avoit royaume qui tant vausist. Et y avoit tant
not-there-was kingdom which so-much were-worth And there was so-much
de tresor que c'estoit merveille; et si vous dirai comment.
of treasure that it-was marvel and so to-you I-will-tell how
En ces provinces getent les enfans tantost comme il
In these provinces they-cast-out the children as-soon as they
sont nez; et ce fait le menu pueple qui ne les pueent
are born and this does the small people who not them can
nourrir. Et le roy les faisoit touz prendre et faisoit escripre
nourish And the king them had all taken and had written
de chascun en quel signal et en quel planete il estoient nez;
of each in what sign and in what planet they were born
et les faisoit nourrir par pluseurs lieus. Et quant uns riches
and them had nourished in several places And when a rich
homs n'avoit nul enfant si aloit au roy; et s'en faisoit
man not-had any child so he-went to-the king and himself-thereof had
donner tant comme il vouloit. Et quant il estoient granz si
given as-many as he wished And when they were grown so
marioit le masle à la femelle, et leur donnoit du sien assez.
he-married the male to the female and to-them gave of-the his plenty
Encor faisait le roy une autre chose. Quant il chevauchoit
Further did the king an other thing When he rode
parmi la cité, et il veoit aucune petite maison, si demandoit
through the city and he saw some little house so he-asked
pourquoy elle estoit si petite, si l'on li disoit qu'elle estoit
why it was so little so one to-him said that-it was
d'un povre homme qui n'avoit de quoi haucier la. Si que le
of-a poor man who not-had of what raise it So that the

roy li donnoit assez de quoy faire la. Et par ceste raison
king to-him gave plenty of what make it And by this reason
n'y avoit en toute sa maistre cité du royaume de Manzi,
not-there was in all his master city of-the kingdom of Manzi
laquelle a nom Quinsay, nulle maison qui ne fust belle.
which has name Quinsai any house which not were fair
Cest roy se faisoit servir de vallez et de damoiselles
This king himself had served by youths and by damsels
plus de mille, qui touz estoient vestuz richement. Si
more than thousand who all were dressed richly So
maintenoit son regne en si grant justice que l'en ne trouvoit
he-maintained his realm in so great justice that one not found
nul qui feist mal. Et estoit la cité si seure que l'en
anyone who did evil And was the city so safe that one
laissoit la nuit la porte ouverte; les maisons et les estaus
left the night the door open the houses and the stalls
plains de toutes riches marchandises. Nuls ne porroit conter
full of all rich merchandises Anyone not could tell
la grant richesce ni la grant bonté des genz de ce païs.
the great richness nor the great goodness of-the people of this country
Or vous ai conté du regne; si vous conterai de la roine.
Now to-you I-have told of-the realm so to-you I-will-tell of the queen
Sachiez qu'elle fu menée au grant Kaan. Et quant il la vit,
Know that-she was led to-the great Khan And when he her saw
si la fist honnourer et servir moult richement comme grant
so her he-had honored and served very richly as great
dame qu'elle estoit. Mais le roy son mari n'issi onques
lady that-she was But the king her husband not-went-out ever
plus des isles de la mer; ains y morut. Et pour ce
more from-the isles of the sea but there died And for this
nous lairons de celui et de sa fame et de ceste matiere, et
we will-leave of him and of his wife and of this matter and

retornerons à notre conte, por conter de la grant province du
will-return to our tale for to-tell of the great province of-the
Manzi, et leur coustumes et leur manieres; [et iront tout
Manzi and their customs and their manners and will-go all
ordonneement. Si commencerons au commencement: c'est à
orderly So we-will-begin at-the beginning this-is at
la cité] de Coguigangui, de là où nous partimes pour conter
the city of Koiganju from there where we departed for to-tell
vous comment la dite province du Manzi fu conquestée.
you how the said province of-the Manzi was conquered

XVI · KOIGANJU TO YANGJU

The book returns to Koiganju, a city of shipping on the Karamoran that makes salt for forty cities. A stone causeway, the only way into Manzi, leads to Paukin, rich in silk. At Kaiu one gets three pheasants for a Venetian groat. Tiju lies near the salt pans by the sea, and Tinju makes salt for the whole province. Yangju rules twenty-seven cities, is the seat of one of the Khan's twelve barons, and makes harness for the army; Mark Pol governed it for three years by the Khan's command.

139 Ci dit de la cité de Coguigangui.
Here tells of the city of Koiganju

Coguigangui si est une moult grant cité si comme je vous ai
Koiganju so is a very great city so as I to-you have
conté ça arriere, qui est à l'entrée de la province de Manzi.
told here back which is at the-entrance of the province of Manzi
Il sont idolastres et font ardoir les corps mors; et sont au
They are idolaters and make burn the bodies dead and are of-the
grant Kaan. Il y a moult de navie, si comme autrefoiz vous
great Khan It there is much of shipping so as other-time to-you
ai conté et dit qu'elle est sur le grand flun de Caramoran. Et
I-have told and said that-it is upon the great river of Karamoran And

si vous di que il en vient en ceste cité moult grant quantité
so to-you I-tell that it thereof comes into this city very great quantity
de marchandises, pour ce que elle est le chief de regne de celle
of merchandises for this that it is the head of realm of that
part. Car moult de cités font porter leur marchandises en ceste
part For many of cities make carry their merchandises into this
dite cité, pour ce que elle est sus ce flun; et s'en va par
said city for this that it is upon this river and itself-thence goes through
maintes citez, là où l'en veut. Encore sachiez que l'en fait
many cities there where one wishes Further know that one makes
moult de sel en ceste cité qui en donne à plus de quarante
much of salt in this city which thereof gives to more than forty
autres citez, dont le grant Kaan a moult tres grans rentes.
other cities whence the great Khan has very very great revenues

Or vous ai dit de ceste cité; si vous dirons avant
Now to-you I-have said of this city so to-you we-will-tell forward
d'une autre cité, laquelle a à nom Pauchin.
of-an other city which has as name Paukin

Ci dit de la cité de Pauchin. 140
Here tells of the city of Paukin

Quant l'en se part de Coguiganguy, si chevauche l'en
When one himself departs from Koiganju so rides one
par selouc une journée, par une chauciée qui est à l'entrée
by southeast a day-journey by a causeway which is at the-entrance
du Manzi; et ceste chauciée est faite de moult belles
of-the Manzi and this causeway is made of very fine
pierres. Et de l'une part et de l'autre de la chauciée, si
stones And on the-one part and on the-other of the causeway so
a yaue; ne en la province l'en ne puet entrer, fors que
there-is water nor into the province one not can enter except that
par ceste chauciée. Au chief de ceste journée treuve l'en la
by this causeway At-the end of this day-journey finds one the

cité de Pauchin moult belle. Il sont ydres et font ardoir
city of Paukin very fine They are idolaters and make burn
les corps mors et sont au grant Kaan; et leur monnoie
the bodies dead and are of-the great Khan and their money
est de chartres. Il vivent de marchandises et d'ars;
is of charters They live from merchandises and from-crafts
et ont soie en grant habondance dont il font draz de
and have silk in great abundance of-which they make cloths of
soie à or assez, et de moult de manieres et de beaulx.
silk with gold plenty and of many of manners and of fine-ones
[De chose de quoy l'en doit vivre ont il à grant planté].
Of thing on which one must live have they in great plenty

Autre chose n'y a à conter, et conterons d'une autre
Other thing not-there is to tell and we-will-tell of-an other
cité dite Caiu.
city called Kaiu

141 Ci dist de la cité de Cayu.
Here tells of the city of Kaiu

Et quant l'en se part de la cité de Pauchin si
And when one himself departs from the city of Paukin so
chevauche l'en par seloc une journée; adonc si treuve l'en
rides one by southeast a day-journey then so finds one
la cité de Cayu [qui est moult grant et noble]. Et sont
the city of Kaiu which is very great and noble And they-are
idolastres; et ont monnoie de charte, et sont au grant
idolaters and have money of charter and are of-the great
Kaan. Il vivent de marchandises et d'ars. [Et si ont
Khan They live from merchandises and from-crafts And so they-have
grant habondance de toutes chosez de vivre. Ilz ont poisson
great abundance of all things of living They have fish
oultre mesure, et ont chace de bestez et d'oyseaulx en
beyond measure and have hunting of beasts and of-birds in

grant quantité]. Et sachiez que l'en auroit bien pour un
great quantity And know that one would-have fully for a
Venicien gros d'argent trois bons faisans.
Venetian groat of-silver three good pheasants

Or nous partirons d'icy et irons avant; et vous
Now we will-depart from-here and will-go forward and to-you
conterons d'une autre cité qui a nom Tiguy.
will-tell of-an other city which has name Tiju

Ci dist de la cité de Tiguy. 142
Here tells of the city of Tiju

Quant l'en se part de la cité de Cayu, si chevauche l'en
When one himself departs from the city of Kaiu so rides one
une journée par selouc, [tousjours trouvant casaus et champs
a day-journey by southeast always finding hamlets and fields
et belles gaaingneries]. Et adonc treuve l'en la cité de Tiguy,
and fine tillages And then finds one the city of Tiju
qui n'est mie trop grant; [mais elle est moult plantureuse de
which not-is at-all too great but it is very plentiful of
trestoutes chosez]. Et les gens sont idolastres, et ont monnoie
all things And the people are idolaters and have money
de chartretes; [et sont au grant Kaan; et vivent d'ars et
of little-charters and are of-the great Khan and live from-crafts and
de marchandise; car il s'y fait moult marchandises. Et
from merchandise for it itself-there makes many merchandises And
si ont navie assez dudit grant flum]. Et sachiez que à la
so they-have shipping plenty of-the-said great river And know that at the
senestre partie, vers soleil levant, loing d'icy trois journées,
left part toward sun rising far from-here three day-journeys
est la mer occeanne. [Jusques à la cité, de toutez pars se fait
is the sea ocean As-far-as to the city from all parts itself makes
sel en grant quantité; car il y a de moult bonnes salines]. Et
salt in great quantity for it there is of very good salt-works And

si y a une cité qui a nom Tinguy, qui est moult noble. Et
so there is a city which has name Tinju which is very noble And
en ceste cité a tant sel que toute la province en a assez.
in this city there-is so-much salt that all the province thereof has plenty
Et si vous di, pour certain, que le grant Kaan en reçoit
And so to-you I-tell for certain that the great Khan thereof receives
grant rente. Il sont idolastres, et ont monnaie de charte.
great revenue They are idolaters and have money of charter

Or nous partirons d'icy et retournerons à Tiguy, qui
Now we will-depart from-here and will-return to Tiju which
bien vous en ai dit et conté cy dessus. Si vous diray
well to-you thereof I-have said and told here above So to-you I-will-tell
d'une autre cité qui a nom Janguy.
of-an other city which has name Yangju

143 Cy dist de la cité de Janguy.
Here tells of the city of Yangju

Quant l'en se part de Tiguy l'en chevauche une journée
When one himself departs from Tiju one rides a day-journey
[par seloc]; et au chief de ceste journée treuve l'en la
by southeast and at-the end of this day-journey finds one the
cité de Janguy, [qui moult est grant et noble], laquelle a
city of Yangju which very is great and noble which has
seigneurie sus .xxvij. cités, qui sont moult bonnes; si ce
lordship over twenty-seven cities which are very good so this
que ceste cité de Janguy est moult puissant. Et si siet [en
that this city of Yangju is very powerful And so sits in
ceste cité] uns des .xij. barons du grant Kaan; [car elle est
this city one of-the twelve barons of-the great Khan for it is
eslevée pour un des .xij. sieges]. Il sont idolastres et ont
raised for one of-the twelve seats They are idolaters and have
monnaie de chartretes. Et ot seigneurie, Marc Pol, en ceste
money of little-charters And had lordship Mark Pol in this

cité, trois ans [accompliz, par le commandement du grand
city three years accomplished by the command of-the great
Kaan. Il vivent de marchandises et d'ars, car l'en y fait
Khan They live from merchandises and from-crafts for one there makes
harnois de chevaliers et d'hommes d'armes en grant quantité.
harness of knights and of-men of-arms in great quantity
Car en ceste cité, et environ des appartenances, demeurent
For in this city and around of-the appurtenances dwell
gens d'armes assez que le seigneur y fait sejourner].
people of-arms plenty whom the lord there makes sojourn

Autre chose n'y a qui à ramentevoir face. Si vous
Other thing not-there is which to mention may-make So to-you
conteray avant et vous diray de .ij. grans provinces qui
I-will-tell forward and to-you I-will-tell of two great provinces which
du Manzi meismes sont, qui sont vers ponent. Et vous
of-the Manzi same are which are toward west And to-you
dirai avant de la cité qui a nom Nanghin.
I-will-tell first of the city which has name Nanghin

Nanghin is a rich province of silk and lions. Saianfu held out three years against the Khan after the rest of Manzi submitted, protected by its deep waters, until Nicholas and Maffeo Pol offered to build siege engines. Their mangonels hurled stones into the city, crushing houses and killing people, and the townsfolk, thinking it enchantment, surrendered. At Sinju flows the Kiang, the greatest river in the world, up to ten miles wide and a hundred days long, which carries more shipping than all the seas of Christendom; boats are towed upstream with ropes of split cane.

144 Cy dist de la cité de Nanghin.

Here tells of the city of Nanghin

Nanghin est une province vers ponent, moult noble. Il

Nanghin is a province toward west very noble They

sont idolastres et ont monnoie de chartres, et sont au

are idolaters and have money of charters and are of-the

grant Kaan; et vivent d'ars et de marchandises. Il y a

great Khan and live from-crafts and from merchandises It there is

grant habondance de soie, car il en font draps d'or et

great abundance of silk for they thereof make cloths of-gold and

de soie de toutes manieres moult beaux. Et si ont grant

of silk of all manners very fine And so they-have great

marchie de tous blez et de toutes choses de vivre; car

market of all grains and of all things of living for

moult est plantureuse province. Et si ont venoison assez

very it-is plentiful province And so they-have venison plenty

[et lyons aussi. Et si a grans marchans et riches,

and lions also And so there-are great merchants and rich

dont le seigneur en a grant prouffit d'euls, des

from-whom the lord thereof has great profit from-them from-the

droits de la marchandise que ilz achetent et vendent].

rights of the merchandise which they buy and sell

Or nous partirons de cy, car il n'y a autre chose
Now we will-depart from here for it not-there is other thing
qui à conter face. Et vous conterons de la tres noble
which to tell may-make And to-you will-tell of the very noble
cité de Saianfu, qui bien fait à conter en notre livre; car
city of Saianfu which well is-fit to tell in our book for
trop est grant fait à conter de son affaire.
very-much it-is great deed to tell of its affair

Cy dist de la très-noble cité de Saianfu et comme elle 145
Here tells of the very-noble city of Saianfu and how it
fut prise par les engins qui furent dreciez devant ladite cité.
was taken by the engines which were raised before the-said city

Saianfu est une moult grant cité et noble, qui a toute
Saianfu is a very great city and noble which has all
seigneurie sur douze citez grans et riches; et si y fait l'en
lordship over twelve cities great and rich and so there makes one
grant marchandises et grans mestiers. Ilz sont idolastres et
great merchandises and great crafts They are idolaters and
ont monnoie de chartre, et font ardoir les corps mors. Ilz
have money of charter and make burn the bodies dead They
sont au grant Kaan. Ilz ont soie assez, et font draps de
are of-the great Khan They have silk plenty and make cloths of
soie moult beaux. Et si ont venoison assez. Ceste cité a
silk very fine And so they-have venison plenty This city has
toutes les choses qui à noble cité convient. Et sachiez qu'elle
all the things which to noble city befit And know that-it
se tint trois ans contre le grant Kaan, puis que le Mangy fu
itself held three years against the great Khan after that the Manzi was
rendus. Et tousjours li faisoient, les gens du grant Kaan,
rendered And always to-it made the people of-the great Khan
grans assaulx; mais ilz ne la povoient assegier pour les grans
great assaults but they not it could besiege for the great

eaues parfondes qui sont entour. Et vous di que jamais ne
waters deep which are around And to-you I-tell that ever-more not
l'eussent prise se ne fust une chose que je vous diray.
it-they-would-have taken if not were a thing which I to-you will-tell
Sachiez que quant l'ost du grant Kaan ot esté entour ceste
Know that when the-host of-the great Khan had been around this
cité .iij. ans, et que il ne la povoient prendre, si en furent
city three years and that they not it could take so thereof they-were
moult courroucie. Si distrent messire Nicolas Pol et messire
very angered So said my-lord Nicholas Pol and my-lord
Maffe, au grant Kaan, que ils feroient, se il lui plaisoit,
Maffeo to-the great Khan that they would-make if it to-him pleased
engins par lesquelz ilz feroient tant que la cité se rendroit.
engines by which they would-do so-much that the city itself would-render
Quant le grant Kaan l'oy, si en ot moult grant joie.
When the great Khan it-heard so thereof he-had very great joy
Adonc firent, les deux freres, appareillier merrien et firent faire
Then made the two brothers prepare timber and had made
grant perrieres et grans mangoniaus, et les firent asseoir en
great petraries and great mangonels and them had set in
divers lieux entour la cité. Quant ly sires et ses barons virent
diverse places around the city When the lord and his barons saw
ces engins dressier et getter les pierres, si en orent moult
these engines raised and throw the stones so thereof they-had very
grans merveille, et moult voulentiers les regarderent. Car
great marvel and very willingly them they-looked-at For
moult leur estoit estrange chose, pour ce que onques mais
very to-them was strange thing for this that ever more
n'avoient veu ne oy parler de tielx engins. Si getterent, cil
not-they-had seen nor heard speak of such engines So threw those
engins, dedens la cité et abatoient les maisons à trop grant
engines within the city and struck-down the houses in very great

planté, et tuoient gens à merveilles. Et quant les gens de la
plenty and killed people to marvels And when the people of the
cité virent celle male aventure, que oncques n'avoient veue ne
city saw that evil adventure which ever not-they-had seen nor
oye, si furent moult esbahy, et avoient moult grant merveille
heard so they-were very astonished and had very great marvel
comment se povoit estre. Et cuidoient tuit estre mort par ces
how it could be And they-thought all to-be dead by these
pierres. Et tuit vraiment cuidoient que ce fust enchantement.
stones And all truly thought that this were enchantment

Si pristrent conseil et accorderent qu'il se rendroient
So they-took counsel and agreed that-they themselves would-render
et envoierent messaiges au seigneur de l'ost qu'il se
and sent envoys to-the lord of the-host that-they themselves
vouloient rendre au grant Kaan, en la maniere que les
wished to-render to-the great Khan in the manner that the
autres citez de la contrée avoient fait. Et ainsi le firent
other cities of the country had done And thus it they-did
et furent receus et tenus comme les autres citez. Et ce
and were received and held as the other cities And this
avint par la grant paour des engins.
happened through the great fear of-the engines

Et sachiez que ceste cité et sa contrée est une des
And know that this city and its country is one of-the
meilleurs citez que le grant Kaan ait; car il en a moult
best cities which the great Khan have for he thereof has very
grant rente et grant prouffit.
great revenue and great profit

146 Cy dist de la cité de Singuy.

Here tells of the city of Sinju

Et quant l'en se part de la cité de Nanghin, et on

And when one himself departs from the city of Nanghin and one

chevauche .xv. milles [par seloc], si treuve l'en une cité qui

rides fifteen miles by southeast so finds one a city which

a nom Ciguy, qui n'est mie trop grande, mais elle est de

has name Sinju which not-is at-all too great but it is of

grans marchandises, et si y a moult grans navie. Ilz sont

great merchandises and so there is very great shipping They are

idolastres, et sont au grant Kaan; et ont monnoie de

idolaters and are of-the great Khan and have money of

chartre. Et sachiez qu'elle siet sur le greigneur fleuve qui

charter And know that-it sits upon the greatest river which

soit ou monde, et ha à nom Quian. Il est bien larges dix

be in-the world and has as name Kiang It is fully wide ten

milles, et en aucuns lieux moins, et a plus de cent

miles and in some places less and has more than a-hundred

journées de l'un chief à l'autre. Et pour ce est, ceste

day-journeys from the-one end to the-other And for this is this

cité, moult marchande; car par ce fleuve vont et viennent

city very trading for by this river go and come

les marchandises de diverses parties du monde; de quoy

the merchandises of diverse parts of-the world of which

elle est moult riche. Et si y a, le grant sire, moult grant

it is very rich And so there has the great lord very great

rente. Et si vous dy que ce fleuve va si loings, et par

revenue And so to-you I-tell that this river goes so far and through

tant de contrées, et par tant de terres et de citez

so-many of countries and through so-many of lands and of cities

que, en verité, il va par ce flun, et vient, plus de naviere

that in truth it goes by this river and comes more of shipping

et plus de riches marchandises et de richesses, qu'il ne va
and more of rich merchandises and of riches than-it — goes
par tous les fluns et par toute la mer des Crestiens, et ne
by all the rivers and by all the sea of-the Christians and not
semble mie flun, mais mer. Et raconte ledit messire Marc
seems at-all river but sea And tells the-said my-lord Mark
Pol, qu'il oy dire à cellui qui pour le grant Kaan gardoit
Pol that-he heard say to him who for the great Khan kept
la droiture sur ce flun, que il passoit bien, amont le fleuve,
the due upon this river that it passed fully up the river
chascun an .cc.m. (200,000) nefs, sans celles qui
each year two-hundred-thousand 200,000 ships without those which
retournent, qui ne comptoient point. Si povez bien savoir
return which not counted whit So you-can well know
que c'est grant chose. Et a bien, sur ce flun, quatre
that it-is great thing And there-are fully upon this river four
cens grans citez, sans les villes et les chasteaux, qui
hundred great cities without the towns and the castles which
toutes ont navires. Et sont, leurs nefs, faites ainsi comme
all have ships And are their ships made thus as
je vous diray. Elles sont moult grans; si que chascune porte
I to-you will-tell They are very great so that each carries
bien .xj.m. à .xij.m. (onze à douze milles) quintaux
fully eleven-thousand to twelve-thousand eleven to twelve thousands hundredweights
pesant. Et si ont un arbre seullement et une couverture.
weight And so they-have a mast only and a deck

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face, et pour ce nous
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make and for this we
partirons, et vous dirons d'une cité qui a nom Cugui. Mais
will-depart and to-you will-tell of-a city which has name Kwachau But
avant vous conterons d'une chose que je vous avoie oubliée à
first to-you we-will-tell of-a thing which I to-you had forgotten to

compter. Sachiez que ces nefs, qui vont amont ce flun, se
tell Know that these ships which go up this river themselves
font tirer, pour ce que l'aigue court trop fort; car autrement
have towed for this that the-water runs too strongly for otherwise
ne pourroient elles monter. Et vous dy que la corde à quoy
not could they go-up And to-you I-tell that the rope by which
on les tire a bien trois cens pas de lonc, et n'est d'autre
one them tows has fully three hundred paces of long and not-is of-other
chose que de cannes ainsi faittes: ilz ont canne qui ont
thing than of canes thus made they have cane which have
bien quinze pas de lonc; et prennent ces cannes et les font
fully fifteen paces of long and take these canes and them make
fendre de lonc, et lient l'un aveuc l'autre, et en font leurs
split of long and bind the-one with the-other and thereof make their
cordes si longues comme ilz veulent, et sont moult fortes.
ropes so long as they wish and they-are very strong

Kwachau gathers grain for the court, and the Khan has made a waterway from it all the way to Khanbaliq. In the river opposite stands an island of rock with a monastery of two hundred idolater monks. Chinkianfu has two Nestorian churches, built in 1278 by the baron Mar-Sarghis while he governed there. At Chinginju, when Bayan sent his Alans to take the city, they found good wine, drank until they slept like swine, and were all killed in the night; Bayan then took the city and put everyone in it to the sword.

Cy apres dist de la cité de Cuguy. 147

Here after tells of the city of Kwachau

Cuguy est une petite cité, [et est vers seloc]; et sont au

Kwachau is a little city and is toward southeast and they-are of-the

grant Kaan; et ont monnoie de chartre; et est sur ce fleuve

great Khan and have money of charter and it-is upon this river

devant dit. Et en ceste cité se recueillent grant quantité

before said And in this city themselves gather great quantity

de blez, et de ris, qui se portent à la grant cité de

of grains and of rice which themselves carry to the great city of

Cambaluc, pour la court du grant Kaan; pour ce que de

Khanbaliq for the court of-the great Khan for this that from

ceste contrée viennent li grain qui ont mestier pour la court

this country come the grains which have need for the court

du grant Kaan. Et si vous dy que li grans Sires a fait

of-the great Khan And so to-you I-tell that the great Lord has had

faire telles voies et telles ordonnances par yaues douces et

made such ways and such ordinances by waters sweet and

par lacs, de ceste cité jusques à Cambaluc, par grans fossés

by lakes from this city as-far-as to Khanbaliq by great ditches

qui vont de lieu en aultre; si que les grans nefs toutes

which go from place to other so that the great ships all

chargées peuvent aler de ceste cité de Cucuy jusques à la
laden can go from this city of Kwachau as-far-as to the
grant cité de Cambaluc. [Et aussi y peut aler par terre, car
great city of Khanbaliq And also there one-can go by land for
de ces fossez est la terre haulte que l'en va dessus, laquelle
of these ditches is the earth high so-that one goes above which
fu traite des fossez et est mise d'une part et d'autre.]
was drawn from-the ditches and is put on-one part and on-other

Et sachiez que à l'encontre de ceste cité de Cucuy,
And know that at the-opposite of this city of Kwachau
enmy le flun, a une isle de roche en laquelle il y a
amid the river there-is an isle of rock in which it there is
un moustier d'ydoles, où il y a bien deux cens frères
a minster of-idols where it there is fully two hundred brothers
idolastres. Et est ceste abbaye chief de maint aultre moustier
idolaters And is this abbey head of many other minster
d'idolastres ainsi comme entre les crestiens un archevechiez.
of-idolaters thus as among the Christians an archbishopric

[Or nous partirons de cy, et du flum, et vous
Now we will-depart from here and from-the river and to-you
dirons d'une cité qui a nom Chinghianfu.]
will-tell of-a city which has name Chinkianfu

148 Cy dist de la cité de Chingianfu.
Here tells of the city of Chinkianfu

Chinghianfu est une cité du Manzi; et sont idolastres, et
Chinkianfu is a city of-the Manzi and they-are idolaters and
sont au grant Kaan; et ont monnoie de chartre. Il vivent
are of-the great Khan and have money of charter They live
de mestiers et de marchandises. Et ont soie assez dont
from crafts and from merchandises And they-have silk plenty of-which
il font draps de soie et dorez de pluseurs manieres. Et si y
they make cloths of silk and gilded of several manners And so there

a grans marchans et riches, et ont assez de venoisons et
are great merchants and rich and they-have plenty of venisons and
planté de choses de vivre. Et si y a deux eglises de crestiens
plenty of things of living And so there are two churches of Christians
nestorins. Et ce fu depuis l'an de notre Seigneur mille deux
Nestorians And this was since the-year of our Lord thousand two
cens .lxxviij. (1278) ans de Crist; et vous dirons comment.
hundred seventy-eight 1278 years of Christ and to-you we-will-tell how

Il fu voirs que il avint en l'an dessus dit que le grant
It was true that it happened in the-year above said that the great
Kaan y envoya un sien baron qui avoit à nom Marsarguis,
Khan there sent a his baron who had as name Mar-Sarghis
et estoit crestiens nestorins, pour gouverner ceste cité trois
and was Christian Nestorian for to-govern this city three
ans. Et il le fist ainsi. En ces trois ans qu'il demoura illec,
years And he it did thus In these three years that-he dwelt there
fist faire ces deux eglises de crestiens que je vous ai dit. Et
he-had made these two churches of Christians which I to-you have said And
depuis en ça y ont esté; car avant n'en y avoit nulle.
since on here there they-have been for before not-thereof there was any

[Or vous lairons de ce à parler. Si vous conterons avant
Now you we-will-leave of this to speak So to-you we-will-tell forward
d'une cité qui est moult grant, qui a à nom Chinginguy.]
of-a city which is very great which has as name Chinginju

Cy dist de la cité de Chinginguy. 149
Here tells of the city of Chinginju

Quant l'en se part de la cité de Chingianfu et on
When one himself departs from the city of Chinkianfu and one
chevauche trois journées [par seloc] adonc treuve l'en la
rides three day-journeys by southeast then finds one the
cité de Chinginguy qui moult est grande et noble. Ilz
city of Chinginju which very is great and noble They

sont ydolastres, et ont monnoie de chartre, et sont au
are idolaters and have money of charter and are of-the
grant Kaan. Ilz vivent de marchandises et de mestiers;
great Khan They live from merchandises and from crafts
et ont soie assez, et oiseileis, et de toutes manieres de
and have silk plenty and fowling and of all manners of
vivres a grant planté; et est moult plantureuse terre.
victuals in great plenty and it-is very plentiful land

Et vous diray une mauvaise chose que cilz de ceste
And to-you I-will-tell an evil thing which those of this
cité firent une fois, et comment ils l'acheterent chierement.
city did one time and how they it-paid-for dearly
Il fu voirs que quant la grant province de Mangy fu prise,
It was true that when the great province of Manzi was taken
et que Baian en estoit chief de par le grant Kaan; si
and that Bayan thereof was head from by the great Khan so
envoia, ledit Baian, une partie de sa gent que on nommoit
sent the-said Bayan a part of his people whom one named
Alains, qui sont crestiens, pour prendre ceste cité. Si la
Alans who are Christians for to-take this city So it
prirent et entrerent dedens, et y trouverent bons vins. Si
they-took and entered within and there found good wines So
en burent tant qu'ilz furent yvres, et se coucherent
thereof they-drank so-much that-they were drunk and themselves lay-down
et dormoient comme porceaux. Tantost comme la nuit vint,
and slept like swine As-soon as the night came
si les occistrent tous, que oncques n'en eschappa nul.
so them they-killed all so-that ever not-thereof escaped any

Et quant Baian sot qu'ilz avoient occis ses hommes si
And when Bayan knew that-they had killed his men so
desloyaument, si envoya un sien autre admiral atout grant
disloyally so he-sent a his other admiral with-all great

gent, et prit la cité par force, et mirent tous ceulx de la
people and took the city by force and put all those of the
cité à l'espée que un seul n'en eschappa qui ne fust mort.
city to the-sword so-that a single not-thereof escaped who not were dead
En ceste maniere fu toute la gent de ceste cité desconfite.
In this manner was all the people of this city undone

Or laisserons de ce et vous conterons d'une autre cité
Now we-will-leave of this and to-you will-tell of-an other city
qui est appellée Siguy.
which is called Suju

XIX · SUJU AND THE DESCRIPTION OF QUINSAI

Suju, sixty miles around, has six thousand stone bridges and so many skilled people that, were they warriors, they could conquer the world; its name means Earth, and nearby Quinsai's means Heaven. The queen of Manzi sent Bayan a written account of Quinsai, which Mark later saw for himself: a city a hundred miles around, with twelve thousand bridges and twelve crafts of twelve thousand houses each. In the lake are islands with palaces for festivals, the streets are paved, there are three thousand baths, and each household writes its members on its door. The king's palace was ten miles around.

Ci dist de la cité de Siguy. 150
Here tells of the city of Suju

Siguy est une tres noble cité et grande. Ilz sont idolastres,
Suju is a very noble city and great They are idolaters
et sont au grant Kaan; et ont monnoie de chartre; et
and are of-the great Khan and have money of charter and
ont soie en grant quantité; et vivent de mestiers et de
have silk in great quantity and live from crafts and from
marchandises. Ilz ont grant planté de soie dont ilz font
merchandises They have great plenty of silk of-which they make

draps à or et autres. Elle est moult grant cité, et a bien
cloths with gold and others It is very great city and has fully
de tour .lx. milles. Et si y a si grant planté de gent que
of circuit sixty miles And so there is so great plenty of people that
l'en n'en puet savoir le nombre. Et se ceulx de celle cité
one not-thereof can know the number And if those of that city
et ceulx de la contrée du Mangy feussent gens d'armes,
and those of the country of-the Manzi were people of-arms
ilz conquesteroient tout l'aultre monde; mais ilz ne sont
they would-conquer all the-other world but they not are
point hommes d'armes, ains sont marchans et gens moult
whit men of-arms but are merchants and people very
soubtilz de tous mestiers. Et si a en ceste cité moult
skilled in all crafts And so there-are in this city many
de philosophes et moult de mires. Et sachiez que en celle
of philosophers and many of physicians And know that in that
cité a .vj. mille ponts, tous de pierre, et passe bien,
city there-are six thousand bridges all of stone and passes fully
soubz chascun pont, une galée ou deux. Et es montaignes
beneath each bridge a galley or two And in-the mountains
de ceste cité croist reobarbe et gingembre aussi à grant
of this city grows rhubarb and ginger also in great
planté; car, pour un gros venicien, en auroit on bien .lx.
plenty for for a groat Venetian thereof would-have one fully sixty
livres. Et a, ceste cité, soubs sa seigneurie, .xvj. grans cités
pounds And has this city under its lordship sixteen great cities
qui sont moult bonnes et bien marchandes. Et le nom
which are very good and well trading And the name
de ceste cité Siguy vault à dire en françois: «la terre»; et
of this city Suju is-worth to say in French the earth and
une autre cité, qui est pres de cy, qui a nom Quinsay,
an other city which is near from here which has name Quinsai

vault à dire: «le ciel», de laquelle nous vous conterons cy
is-worth to say the heaven of which we to-you will-tell here
avant; et ces noms ont elles pour leur grant noblesse.
forward and these names have they for their great nobility

Or nous partirons de Siguy et irons avant à une autre cité
Now we will-depart from Suju and will-go forward to an other city
qui a nom Vouguy; et est loings de Siguy une journée, et
which has name Vuju and it-is far from Suju a day-journey and
est moult grant cité et bonne et de grans marchandises et de
is very great city and good and of great merchandises and of
mestiers. Et pour ce qu'il n'y a autre chose qui à conter
crafts And for this that-it not-there is other thing which to tell
face, nous irons avant pour conter de la tres noble cité de
may-make we will-go forward for to-tell of the very noble city of
Quinsay, qui est la maistre cité de la contrée du Mangy.
Quinsai which is the master city of the country of-the Manzi

Cy devise de la province de Quinsay qui est chief de 151
Here describes of the province of Quinsai which is head of
la province du Mangi.
the province of-the Manzi

Quant on se part de la cité de Siangan, et l'en a
When one himself departs from the city of Changan and one has
chevauchie trois journées par moult beau païs, trouvant
ridden three day-journeys through very fine country finding
villes et chasteaux assez, adonc treuve l'en la tres noble cité
towns and castles plenty then finds one the very noble city
de Quinsay, qui vault à dire en françois la cité du Ciel,
of Quinsai which is-worth to say in French the city of-the Heaven
si comme autrefois vous ay dit. [Et puis que nous sommes
so as other-time to-you I-have said And since that we are
là venuz], si vous conterons sa grant noblesce pour ce que
there come so to-you we-will-tell its great nobility for this that

bien fait à conter; car c'est, sans faille, la plus noble cité
well it-is-fit to tell for it-is without fail the most noble city
et la meilleur qui soit ou monde, selon ce que la
and the best which be in-the world according-to that which the
royne de cest regne envoya par escrit à Baian qui conquist la
queen of this realm sent by writing to Bayan who conquered the
contrée, pour ce qu'il envoyast l'escript au grant Kaan, à ce
country for this that-he should-send the-writing to-the great Khan to this
qu'il sceust la grant bonté de ceste cité, affin qu'il ne la
that-he might-know the great goodness of this city to-the-end that-he not it
feist gaster ne destruire. Et, selon ce que en l'escript
should-have wasted nor destroyed And according-to that which in the-writing
estoit contenu, vous en deviserons la verité. Et puis le vit et
was contained to-you thereof we-will-describe the truth And then it saw and
sçot ledit messire Marc Pol, si comme nous vous conterons.
knew the-said my-lord Mark Pol so as we to-you will-tell

Tout premierement estoit contenu ou dit escript que ladite
All first was contained in-the said writing that the-said
cité de Quinsay est si grant qu'elle a bien cent milles de
city of Quinsai is so great that-it has fully hundred miles of
tour. Et si y a .xij. (douze) mille pons de pierre si haulx
circuit And so there are twelve twelve thousand bridges of stone so high
que par dessoubz passeroit bien une grant navie. Et ne se
that by beneath would-pass well a great ship And not himself
merveille nulz se il y a tant de pons; car je vous di que la
marvel anyone if it there is so-many of bridges for I to-you tell that the
cité est toute en eaue, et environnée d'eaue; si que pour ce
city is all in water and surrounded with-water so that for this
convient il que il y ait maint pont pour aler par la cité.
behooves it that it there are many bridge for to-go through the city

Encore contenoit ledit escript que en celle cité avoit
Further contained the-said writing that in that city there-were
douze manieres de divers mestiers. Et pour chascun mestier
twelve manners of diverse crafts And for each craft
avoit .xij. (douze) mille maisons où ceulx qui ouvroient
there-were twelve twelve thousand houses where those who worked
demouroient. Et en chascune maison avoit .x. (dix)
dwelt And in each house there-were ten ten
hommes du moins; et en telle y avoit .xx. (vingt),
men at-the least and in such there were twenty twenty
et en telle .xl. (quarante). Non pas qu'ilz fussent tous
and in such forty forty Not at-all that-they were all
maistres, mais menestereux, qui font ce que le maistre
masters but journeymen who do that which the master
commande. Et tout ce avoit bien mestier; car de ceste
commands And all this was well needful for from this
cité se fournissoient maintes autres cités de la contrée.
city themselves furnished many other cities of the country

Et si contenoit encore ledit escript, que il y avoit tant
And so contained further the-said writing that it there was so-many
de marchans et si riches, qui faisoient tant de marchandises
of merchants and so rich who made so-many of merchandises
et si grans, qu'il n'est homs qui la verité en sceust dire
and so great that-there not-is man who the truth thereof might-know say
pour la grant quantité qu'il y a. Et sachiez que les maistres
for the great quantity which-it there is And know that the masters
des mestiers qui estoient chiefs des maisons, ne leurs femmes,
of-the crafts who were heads of-the houses nor their wives
ne touchoient riens de leurs mains; mais demouroient si
not touched anything with their hands but dwelt so
nettement et si richement, comme se ilz feussent roys. Et estoit
cleanly and so richly as if they were kings And was

estably et ordonné de par le roy, que nulz ne feist autre
established and ordained from by the king that anyone not should-do other
mestier que celluy de son pere, et eust tout l'avoir du monde.
craft than that of his father and had all the-wealth of-the world
Et a dedens la cité un grant lac qui a bien .xxx.
And there-is within the city a great lake which has fully thirty
(trente) milles de tour. Et tout entour ce lac a moult
thirty miles of circuit And all around this lake there-are very
beaux palais et moult belles maisons, et riches, qui sont
fine palaces and very fine houses and rich which are
de gentilz hommes de la cité. Et y a moult d'abbaies et
of noble men of the city And there are many of-abbeys and
d'eglises de idolastres. Ou milieu de cellui lac a deux
of-churches of idolaters In-the middle of that lake there-are two
isles; et y a sur chascune un palais bel et moult riche
isles and there is upon each a palace fine and very rich
et moult grant, qui semble estre palais d'empereur. Et
and very great which seems to-be palace of-emperor And
quant aucuns de la cité vouloit faire aucune grant feste,
when any of the city wished to-make some great feast
si le faisoient en ce palais; car ilz y trouvoient appareillie
so it they-made in this palace for they there found prepared
vaisselemente d'argent, et instrumens, et tout ce qui à ce
plate of-silver and instruments and all that which for this
avoit mestier. Et y ce pourveoit le Roy, pour honnorer sa
was needful And there this provided the King for to-honor his
gent; et estoit à chascun commun, qui feste vouloit faire.
people and it-was to each common who feast wished to-make

Es maisons de ceste cité avoit hautes tours de pierre
In-the houses of this city there-were high towers of stone
où l'en mettoit les chieres choses des maisons pour la
where one put the dear things of-the houses for the
doubte du feu; car leurs autres habitations sont de bois.
fear of-the fire for their other dwellings are of wood
Les gens sont idolastres; et, depuis que le grant Kaan
The people are idolaters and since that the great Khan
les conquesta, ont monnoie de charte. Et sachiez que ilz
them conquered they-have money of charter And know that they
menguent de toutes chars, de chien et d'autres vilz bestes,
eat of all meats of dog and of-other vile beasts
que crestiens ne mengeroient en nulle maniere. Et sachiez
which Christians not would-eat in any manner And know
que depuis que le grant Kaan ot la cité, il ordonna que
that since that the great Khan had the city he ordained that
chascun des douze mille pons feust gardes, par jour et
each of-the twelve thousand bridges were guarded by day and
par nuit, de dix personnes, pour ce que nulz n'y feist
by night by ten persons for this that anyone not-there should-do
mal, ne ne feust si hardis de penser trahyson ne relevement
harm nor not were so bold of thinking treason nor revolt
contre luy. Encore sachiez que dedens ladite cité a un
against him Further know that within the-said city there-is a
mont sur lequel a une tour; et sur celle tour une table
mount upon which there-is a tower and upon that tower a board
de fust; et toutes fois que feu ou autre doubte estoit en
of wood and all times that fire or other fear was in
la cité, si avoit un homme atout un martel en la main,
the city so there-was a man with-all a mallet in the hand
qui féroit sur laditte table, et estoit oïs de moult loings.
who struck upon the-said board and was heard from very far

Si que quant on ooit cette table sonner, chascun savoit
So that when one heard this board sound each knew
certainement que il y avoit feu en la cité, ou autre besoing.
certainly that it there was fire in the city or other need
Et sachiez que le grant Kaan fait moult bien garder
And know that the great Khan has very well guarded
celle cité pour ce que elle est chief de la contrée du
that city for this that it is head of the country of-the
Mangy; et pour ce qu'il y a moult grant avoir et moult
Manzi and for this that-it there is very great wealth and very
grant tresor des droitures des marchandises que l'en y
great treasure from-the dues of-the merchandises which one there
fait, dont il y a si grans rentes qu'il n'est nulz qui
makes of-which it there is so great revenues that-there not-is anyone who
l'oïst dire, se il ne l'avoit veu, qui le deust croire.
it-heard tell if he not it-had seen who it should believe
Et sachiez que toutes les rues de la cité sont pavées
And know that all the streets of the city are paved
de pierres, et aussi sont tuit li chemin de la contrée
with stones and also are all the roads of the country
du Mangy; si que on y puet bien chevauchier et aler
of-the Manzi so that one there can well ride and go
partout nettement. Et se ne feust le pavement, on n'y
everywhere cleanly And if not were the paving one not-there
pourroit mie ausiement chevauchier; car le païs est moult
could at-all likewise ride for the country is very
bas et plain, et il y a moult parfont quant il pleut.
low and flat and it there is very deep when it rains
Encore sachiez que en ceste cité de Quinsay a bien
Further know that in this city of Quinsai there-are fully
trois mille bains qui sourdent de terre, de quoy les gens
three thousand baths which spring from earth from which the people

ont moult de delit et de netteté. Et est la mer Occeane à
have much of delight and of cleanness And is the sea Ocean at
.xxv. (vingt-cinq) milles pres de ceste cité que on appelle
twenty-five twenty-five miles near of this city which one calls
Ganfu. Et y a moult grant navie qui vient et va en
Ganfu And there is very great shipping which comes and goes into
Ynde, et es autres parties estranges, portant et raportant
India and into-the other parts foreign carrying and bringing-back
marchandises de maintes manieres, de quoy la cité vault
merchandises of many manners of which the city is-worth
mieux. Et de ceste cité de Quinsay part un fleuve grant
better And from this city of Quinsai departs a river great
qui va jusques audit port de mer. Et sachiez que le
which goes as-far-as to-the-said port of sea And know that the
grant Kaan a parti la contrée du Mangy en .ix. parties;
great Khan has divided the country of-the Manzi into nine parts
et en a fait .ix. royaumes. Et à chascun royaume il y
and thereof has made nine kingdoms And to each kingdom he there
envoie un roy qui tuit sont subgiet au grant Kaan; mais
sends a king who all are subject to-the great Khan but
chascun roy fait chascun an le compte de son royaume
each king makes each year the account of his kingdom
aux comptes du grant siege. Et en ceste cité demeure li
at-the accounts of-the great seat And in this city dwells the
uns des roys qui a dessoubz lui cent .xl. (quarante) cités
one of-the kings who has beneath him hundred forty forty cities
grans et riches. Et sachiez que, en ceste grandisme contrée
great and rich And know that in this very-great country
du Mangi, a plus de mille et .ij. (deux) cens cités
of-the Manzi there-are more than thousand and two two hundred cities
grans et riches, sans les chasteaulx et les villes dont
great and rich without the castles and the towns of-which

il y a grant quantité. Et vous di pour certain que, en
it there is great quantity And to-you I-tell for certain that in
chascune de ces mille deux cens cités, a garde de
each of these thousand two hundred cities there-is guard from
par le grant Kaan. Et celle qui a la mendre garde est de
by the great Khan And that which has the least guard is of
.m. (mille) hommes; et telle de .x.m. (dix mille),
a-thousand thousand men and such of ten-thousand ten thousand
et telle de .xx.m. (vingt mille); et telle de .xxx.m.
and such of twenty-thousand twenty thousand and such of thirty-thousand
(trente mille); si que c'est si grant nombre de gent que à
thirty thousand so that it-is so great number of people that with
paines se pourroit compter. Et sont, ceste gent, qui ces
pains itself could count And are this people who these
cités gardent, de la province de Catay; et sont bonnes gens
cities guard from the province of Cathay and are good people
d'armes; mais ilz ne sont mie tous à cheval; ains en y
of-arms but they not are at-all all on horse but thereof there
a moult grant quantité à pié, selon ce que la garde de
are very great quantity on foot according-to that which the guard of
chascune cité requiert. Et sont tuit hoste du grant Kaan.
each city requires And are all host of-the great Khan

Et vous di en verité que l'afaire de ceste cité est si grant,
And to-you I-tell in truth that the-affair of this city is so great
et y prent, le grant Kaan, si grans droitures, chascun an, que
and there takes the great Khan so great dues each year that
à paines le pourroit on escripre; ne ne croy que nulz qui
with pains it could one write nor not I-believe that anyone who
l'oïst dire, s'il ne le veoit, le peust croire, si desmesureement
it-heard tell if-he not it saw it could believe so beyond-measure

est grant l'avoir et la richesse qui y est, et la rente
is great the-wealth and the richness which there is and the revenue
que li grans Sires y a. Et pour ce vous escripray je.
which the great Lord there has And for this to-you will-write I

Et ont la gent de ceste contrée une telle coustume que
And have the people of this country a such custom that
sitost comme uns enfes est nes ilz escripvent le jour, l'eure, en
as-soon as a child is born they write the day the-hour in
quelle planette, et soubz quel signe il est nez; si que chascuns
what planet and under what sign he is born so that each
d'eulx scet le jour de sa nativité. Et quant aucuns vuelt faire
of-them knows the day of his nativity And when someone wishes to-make
aucuns voiages si va aux astronomiens et leur compte
some voyages so he-goes to-the astrologers and to-them tells
s'aventure pour savoir se il est bon de cheminer ou non. Et
his-fortune for to-know if it is good to travel or not And
aucunes fois leur dient que non; si que ilz en laissent
some times to-them they-say that no so that they thereof leave
leur voiage jusques atant qu'il leur die que temps soit.
their voyage until such-time that-he to-them say that time be
Car maintes fois leur en dient verité; si que ilz ont grant
For many times to-them thereof they-tell truth so that they have great
foy en eulx. Et sachiez qu'ilz sont bons maistres de cest art.
faith in them And know that-they are good masters of this art

Ilz font ardoir les corps des mors. Et quant aucuns muert,
They make burn the bodies of-the dead And when someone dies
si font, si parent et si ami, moult grant dueil. Et se
so make his kin and his friends very great mourning And themselves
vestent de chanvre, et vont tous derriere le corps atout pluseurs
they-dress in hemp and go all behind the body with-all several
instrumens, et chantent oroisons de leurs ydoles. Et quant ilz
instruments and sing orisons of their idols And when they

sont venus au lieu où le corps doit estre ars, si ont fait
are come to-the place where the body must be burned so they-have had
entaillier en parchemin chevaulx sellés, armeures et draps à or,
carved in parchment horses saddled armors and cloths of gold
moult grant planté; et les mettent tous avec le corps dedans
very great plenty and them put all with the body within
le feu; si que tout art ensemble avec le corps mort. Et dient
the fire so that all burns together with the body dead And they-say
que cellui corps aura toutes ces choses en l'autre siecle, à son
that that body will-have all these things in the-other world at his
commandement; et que les instrumens qu'ilz font sonner,
command and that the instruments which-they make sound
et le chant des ydoles, leur vendra à l'encontre en l'autre
and the chant of-the idols to-them will-come to the-meeting in the-other
siecle. Et l'ydole meismes y vendra pour lui faire honneur.
world And the-idol same there will-come for him to-do honor

Encore est en celle cité li palais du roy qui s'en fouy,
Further is in that city the palace of-the king who himself-thence fled
qui Sires estoit du Mangy, qui est li plus grans (le palais)
who Lord was of-the Manzi which is the most great the palace
qui soit ou monde, si comme je vous deviseray. Sachiez
which be in-the world so as I to-you will-describe Know
qu'il est si grant qu'il a .x. (dix) mille de tour; et est tous
that-it is so great that-it has ten ten miles of circuit and is all
murés entour de haulz murs, et tous quernellés; et dedens
walled around with high walls and all crenelated and within
les murs a les plus beaux jardins et les plus delitables
the walls there-are the most fine gardens and the most delightful
qui soient ou monde, et tous plains des meilleurs fruis
which be in-the world and all full of-the best fruits
du monde. Et y a maintes fontaines et maint lac qui
of-the world And there are many fountains and many lake which

sont plain de poisson. Ou milieu est li palais qui est moult
are full of fish In-the middle is the palace which is very
grans et moult beaux. Il y a .xx. (vingt) sales belles et
great and very fine It there is twenty twenty halls fine and
grans; et en y a une plus grant que les autres où moult
great and thereof there is one more great than the others where many
de gens pourroient mengier. Elle est toute painte à or; et
of people could eat It is all painted with gold and
la couverture et les murs n'ont autre painture, fors que d'or;
the roof and the walls not-have other painting except of gold
si que elle est si belle à veoir que c'est trop grant noblesse.
so that it is so fine to see that it-is very great nobility
Encore sachiez que en ce palais a bien mille
Further know that in this palace there-are fully thousand
chambres moult belles et moult grans, toutes paintes à
chambers very fine and very great all painted with
or, et de diverses couleurs. Encore sachiez que, en ceste
gold and with diverse colors Further know that in this
cité, a .c.lx. (cent soixante) grans rues; et en
city there-are a-hundred-sixty hundred sixty great streets and in
chascune rue .x. (dix) mille maisons; si ce que c'est en
each street ten ten thousand houses so that that it-is in
somme .xvj. (seize) cens mille maisons, entre lesquelles
sum sixteen sixteen hundred thousand houses among which
a grant quantité de riches palais, beaux et grans. Et si
there-is great quantity of rich palaces fine and great And so
y a une eglise tant seulement en la cité, des crestiens
there is a church so-much only in the city of-the Christians
nesterins. Encore vous dirons une autre chose. Sachiez que
Nestorians Further to-you we-will-tell an other thing Know that
tous les bourgois de la ditte cité, et toute autre gent qui
all the burghers of the said city and all other people who

y demeure, si ont telle coustume que chascun a escript
there dwell so have such custom that each has written
sur sa porte: son nom, le nom de sa femme, et de ses
upon his door his name the name of his wife and of his
enfans, de ses esclaves, et de tous ceulx qui en la maison
children of his slaves and of all those who in the house
demeurent; et encore quantes bestes il tient. Et se il avient
dwell and further how-many beasts he keeps And if it happens
que aucun muire en la maison, si abat l'en son nom; et
that someone die in the house so strikes-out one his name and
se autres y naist, si l'escript on avecques les autres, Si que
if other there is-born so it-writes one with the others So that
en telle maniere scet, li Sires, quantes gens il a en sa cité.
in such manner knows the Lord how-many people he has in his city

Et ainsi le fait on par toute la contrée du Mangy et
And thus it does one through all the country of-the Manzi and
du Catay. Et si vous dy que tuit li estrange marchant qui
of-the Cathay And so to-you I-tell that all the foreign merchants who
se herbergent en ces contrées sont escrips par nom et par
themselves lodge in these countries are written by name and by
surnom; aussi le jour et le mois qu'ilz y entrent et quant ilz
surname also the day and the month that-they there enter and when they
s'en partent. Si que par ce puet savoir, li Sires, toutes
themselves-thence depart So that by this can know the Lord all
les fois qu'il vuelt, qui va et qui vient par toute sa terre. Et
the times that-he wishes who goes and who comes through all his land And
certes c'est bien fait de saige et prudent homme et pourveable.
certainly this-is well done of wise and prudent man and provident

Or vous conterons, apres, des rentes que le grant Kaan
Now to-you we-will-tell after of-the revenues which the great Khan
a en ceste cité et appartenances.
has in this city and appurtenances

XX · THE REVENUES OF QUINSAI

The Khan's revenue from Quinsai, the ninth part of Manzi, is immense. Its salt alone yields eighty tomans of gold a year, and sugar, every merchandise, every craft and the charcoal pay three in the hundred, silk ten; Mark, sent several times to audit it, found the rest came to two hundred and ten tomans. One day beyond lies Tacpiju, then Vuju, Ghiuju with the thickest canes in Manzi, and Chanshan on its mount; in all Manzi there are no sheep. Cuju is the last city of Quinsai's kingdom.

Ci devise de la grant rente que le grant Kaan a, 152
Here describes of the great revenue which the great Khan has
chascun an, de laditte noble cité de Quinsay, et de ses
each year from the-said noble city of Quinsai and from its
appartenances.
appurtenances

Or vous conteray la grandisme rente que le grant Kaan
Now to-you I-will-tell the very-great revenue which the great Khan
a, chascun an, de ceste ditte cité de Quinsay, et de ses
has each year from this said city of Quinsai and from its
appartenances, qui est la .ixe. (neuvième) partie de la contrée
appurtenances which is the ninth ninth part of the country
du Mangy. Et premierement, du sel; pour ce que moult
of-the Manzi And first of-the salt for this that much
vault de rente. Sachiez que le sel rent, chascun an, en
it-is-worth of revenue Know that the salt renders each year in
somme .iiij. (quatre) vingt tommans d'or; et chascun tomman
sum four four score tomans of-gold and each toman
vault .lxx.m. (soixante-dix mille) saies d'or, si que les
is-worth seventy-thousand seventy thousand saggi of-gold so that the
.iiij. (quatre) vingts tommans montent, en somme: cinq mille
four four score tomans amount in sum five thousand

et six cens pois d'or; et chascun pois d'or vault plus
and six hundred weights of-gold and each weight of-gold is-worth more
d'un flourin d'or. Si que c'est une grant somme de monnoie.
than-a florin of-gold So that it-is a great sum of money

Et puis que je vous ay dit du sel, si vous diray des
And since that I to-you have said of-the salt so to-you I-will-tell of-the
autres choses et des marchandises; du droit qu'elles paient
other things and of-the merchandises of-the due which-they pay
au grant Kaan. Sachiez que ont fait moult grant planté
to-the great Khan Know that they-have made very great plenty
de sucre en ceste cité, et es appartenances. Et aussi fait on
of sugar in this city and in-the appurtenances And also makes one
es autres .viij. (huit) parties de ceste contrée; si que, je croy,
in-the other eight eight parts of this country so that I believe
qu'en tout l'autre monde, n'en fait on autant comme on
that-in all the-other world not-thereof makes one as-much as one
fait en ceste contrée; non la moitié, se dient pluseurs gens en
makes in this country not the half so say several people in
verité. Si paient au grant seigneur (pour) cent pesant, trois
truth So they-pay to-the great lord for hundred weight three
pois; et de toutes marchandises aussi; et de tous mestiers;
weights and of all merchandises also and of all crafts
et du charbon, dont il y a grant quantité; et de la soie
and of-the charcoal of-which it there is great quantity and of the silk
dont il y a si grant habondance que c'est merveilles: de
of-which it there is so great abundance that it-is marvels from
chascun cent on paie dix pois au grant seigneur. Si que
each hundred one pays ten weights to-the great lord So that
ces choses montent en si desmesuré nombre de monnoie, que
these things amount in so beyond-measure number of money that

c'est impossible chose à croire, combien ceste .ixe. (neuvième)
it-is impossible thing to believe how-much this ninth ninth
partie de laditte contrée du Mangy vault chascun an.
part of the-said country of-the Manzi is-worth each year
Et sachiez en verité que ledit Messire Marc Pol, qui tout
And know in truth that the-said My-lord Mark Pol who all
ce raconte, fu pluseurs fois envoiés par le grant Kaan pour
this tells was several times sent by the great Khan for
veoir le compte de ce que montent les drois et les rentes
to-see the account of that which amount the dues and the revenues
du Seigneur, de ceste .ixe. (neuvième) partie qui montent,
of-the Lord from this ninth ninth part which amount
sans la somme du sel que nous vous avons devant dit,
without the sum of-the salt which we to-you have before said
.ij.c. et .x. (deux cens et dix) tommans d'or qui
two-hundred and ten two hundred and ten tomans of-gold which
valent .xv. mille et .vij. cens mille et .viij. pois d'or,
are-worth fifteen thousand and seven hundred thousand and eight weights of-gold
un des plus desmesurez nombre de monnoie de rente qui
one of-the most beyond-measure number of money of revenue which
oncques feust oïs. Si povez bien veoir que quant li Sires a
ever was heard So you-can well see that when the Lord has
si grant rente de la .ixe. (neuvième) partie de la contrée,
so great revenue from the ninth ninth part of the country
que moult puet valoir la rente des autres .viij. (huit) parties.
that much can be-worth the revenue of-the other eight eight parts
Mais vraiement, ceste est la plus grant et la plus proufitable
But truly this-one is the most great and the most profitable
partie; et, pour le grant prouffit que li grans Sires a de
part and for the great profit which the great Lord has from

ceste contrée, l'aime il moult; et moult le fait soigneusement
this country it-loves he much and much it he-has carefully
garder, et tenir ceulx qui y habitent en grant paix.
guarded and kept those who there dwell in great peace

Or nous partirons de cy et dirons des autres,
Now we will-depart from here and will-tell of-the others

153 Cy dit de la cité de Tacpiguy.
Here tells of the city of Tacpiju

Quant l'en se part de Quinsay et on chevauche une
When one himself departs from Quinsai and one rides a
journée, si treuve l'en la cité de Tacpiguy qui est moult grant
day-journey so finds one the city of Tacpiju which is very great
et belle et riche. Et est sougite à Quinsay. Ilz sont au grant
and fair and rich And it-is subject to Quinsai They are of-the great
Kaan, et ont monnoie de chartretes. Ilz sont ydolatres, et font
Khan and have money of little-charters They are idolaters and make
ardoir les corps mors, en la maniere que j'ay ditte dessus. Et
burn the bodies dead in the manner which I-have said above And
vivent de marchandises et d'ars, et de mestiers. Et ont
they-live from merchandises and from-crafts and from trades And they-have
de toutes choses pour vivre à grant planté et à grant marchie.
of all things for living in great plenty and at great market

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Et pour ce irons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make And for this will-go
nous avant, et vous compterons d'une autre cité qui a nom
we forward and to-you will-tell of-an other city which has name
Viguy, qui est à trois journées de Tacpiguy. Ilz sont ydolatres
Vuju which is at three day-journeys from Tacpiju They are idolaters
et sont au grant Kaan, et ont monnoie de charte, et sont
and are of-the great Khan and have money of charter and are
subgiet à Quinsay. Ilz vivent de marchandises et de mestiers.
subject to Quinsai They live from merchandises and from crafts

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face, et pour ce
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make and for this
nous irons avant.
we will-go forward
A deux journées de cy treuve l'en la cité de Giuguy
At two day-journeys from here finds one the city of Ghiuju
qui moult est grant et belle. Et sont au grant Kaan. Ilz
which very is great and fair And they-are of-the great Khan They
sont idolatres et ont monnoie de charte. Elle est subjette à
are idolaters and have money of charter It is subject to
Quinsay. Ilz ont soie assez et vivent de mestiers et de
Quinsai They have silk plenty and live from trades and from
marchandises; et ont assez vivres. Et sachiez que en ceste
merchandises and have plenty victuals And know that in this
cité treuve l'en les plus grosses canes et les plus longues
city finds one the most thick canes and the most long
qui soient en la contrée du Mangy; et ont bien quatre
which be in the country of-the Manzi and they-have fully four
pausmes de gros, et quinze piés de long. Autre chose
palms of thickness and fifteen feet of length Other thing
n'y a qui à conter face; pour ce irons nous avant.
not-there is which to tell may-make for this will-go we forward
Et quant on est party de Giuguy, et on a chevauchie
And when one is departed from Ghiuju and one has ridden
quatre journées par moult beau païs, où il y a
four day-journeys through very fine country where it there is
chasteaux et villes assez; adonc treuve l'en la cité de
castles and towns plenty then finds one the city of
Ciancian, qui moult est grant et belle; et siet sur un
Chanshan which very is great and fair and it-sits upon a
mont qui part le fleuve en deux, qui va en la mer
mount which divides the river in two which goes to the sea

occeanne. Elle est encore de la seigneurie de Quinsay. Et
ocean It is further of the lordship of Quinsai And
sachiez que en toute la contrée du Mangy, n'ont nul
know that in all the country of-the Manzi not-they-have any
mouton, mais ilz ont cheuvres, buefs et vaches assez. Ilz
sheep but they have goats oxen and cows plenty They
sont ydolatres, et vivent de marchandises et de mestiers.
are idolaters and live from merchandises and from trades
Et sont au grant Kaan; et ont monnoie de charte.
And they-are of-the great Khan and have money of charter

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face; pour ce
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make for this
irons avant.
we-will-go forward

Sachiez que puis que on part de Ciancian, et on
Know that since that one departs from Chanshan and one
chevauche trois journées, si treuve l'en la cité de Ciuguy. Et
rides three day-journeys so finds one the city of Cuju And
sont ydolatres; et sont au grant Kaan; et ont monnoie
they-are idolaters and are of-the great Khan and have money
de charte. Ilz vivent de marchandises et de mestiers.
of charter They live from merchandises and from trades
Et est celle cité belle, noble et riche; et est la derreniere
And is that city fair noble and rich and is the last
cité de la seigneurie de Quinsay, de ceste partie. Mais
city of the lordship of Quinsai on this side But
celluy autre royaume qui a nom Fuguy, est aussi l'une
that other kingdom which has name Fuju is also the-one
des .ix. (neuf) parties du Mangy, si comme est Quinsay.
of-the nine nine parts of-the Manzi so as is Quinsai

Autre chose n'y a; si irons avant.
Other thing not-there is so we-will-go forward

The kingdom of Fuju, called Chonka, one of the nine parts of Manzi, abounds in ginger; its people eat men killed by violence, and its warriors shave their foreheads and paint them blue. Kelinfu has three marble bridges a mile long and hens with hair instead of feathers. Fuju, prone to rebellion, is held by a great garrison. All the ships of India come to Zaiton, a hundred cargoes of pepper for every one bound for Alexandria, and the Khan takes a tenth or more; nearby Tiunju makes porcelain. Chonka yields him more than Quinsai, and the book now turns to India.

Cy dist du royaume de Fuguy. 154

Here tells of-the kingdom of Fuju

Quant l'en se part de Ciuguy qui est la derreniere

When one himself departs from Cuju which is the last

cité du royaume de Quinsay, adonc entre l'en ou royaume

city of-the kingdom of Quinsai then enters one into-the kingdom

de Fuguy; et chevauche l'en .vi. (six) journées, par beaux

of Fuju and rides one six six day-journeys by fine

chasteaulx et par belles villes où il a de vivres grant

castles and by fine towns where it there-is of victuals great

planté et venoissons, et chassoisons assez. Et ont moult

plenty and venisons and huntings plenty And they-have many

de lions qui sont moult grans et moult fors. Et si ont

of lions which are very great and very strong And so they-have

gingembre et gaingal, tant que c'est oultre mesure. Car,

ginger and galingale so-much that it-is beyond measure For

pour un gros venicien d'argent, auroit l'en bien .iiij. (quatre)

for a groat Venetian of-silver would-have one fully four four

livre de gingembre bon et fort. Et si ont une maniere de

pounds of ginger good and strong And so they-have a manner of

fruit qui samble saffran, qui bien vault autant en viandes

fruit which seems saffron which well is-worth as-much in foods

comme saffran. Et sachiez que ilz manguent de toutes chars,
as saffron And know that they eat of all meats
et char d'hommes moult voulentiers, puis que il n'est
and flesh of-men very willingly provided that he not-is
mort de sa mort. Si que ilz vont querant ceulx qui sont
dead of his death So that they go seeking those who are
occis, et manguent la char et la tiennent à moult bonne.
killed and eat the flesh and it hold for very good

Et ont ceulx qui vont en ost une telle maniere comme je
And have those who go on host a such manner as I
vous diray. Ilz font rere leurs cheveulx ou front et y font
to-you will-tell They have shaved their hairs on-the forehead and there have
poindre d'azur aussi comme un fer de glaive. Et si sont tuit
painted with-azure as like an iron of glaive And so they-are all
à pié, fors que le chevetaine. Ilz portent lances et sont les plus
on foot except that the captain They carry lances and are the most
cruelz gens du monde. Car je vous di qu'il vont tousjours
cruel people of-the world For I to-you tell that-they go always
occiant hommes, et boivent le sang; et puis le menguent.
killing men and drink the blood and then it eat

Or vous lairons de ce pour conter autre chose.
Now you we-will-leave of this for to-tell other thing

Sachiez que quant on (est) alé six journées, apres ces trois
Know that when one is gone six day-journeys after these three
que je vous ay dit, on treuve la cité de Quelifu, qui moult est
which I to-you have said one finds the city of Kelinfu which very is
grant cité et noble. Et sont au grant Kaan. Ilz ont monnoie
great city and noble And they-are of-the great Khan They have money
de charte; et sont ydolatres. En ceste cité a .iij. (trois) pons
of charter and are idolaters In this city there-are three three bridges
de pierre, les plus beaux que l'en sache ou monde. Et ont
of stone the most fine which one may-know in-the world And they-have

de long chascun bien une mille; et large bien .xx. (vingt)
of length each fully a mile and wide fully twenty twenty
piés. Et sont tous de marbre à coulombes belles et riches.
feet And they-are all of marble with columns fine and rich
Ilz vivent de marchandises et de mestiers. Et si ont
They live from merchandises and from trades And so they-have
soies assez; et gingembre, et gaingal à grant planté. Et ont
silks plenty and ginger and galingale in great plenty And they-have
moult belles femmes. Et se y a une chose moult estrange
very fair women And so there is a thing very strange
qui bien fait à conter. Sachiez que ilz ont gelines qui n'ont
which well is-fit to tell Know that they have hens which not-have
nulles plumes, mais ont poil. Et si sont toutes noires; et font
any feathers but have hair And so they-are all black and make
œuf comme celles de nostre païs; et sont bonnes à mengier.
egg like those of our country and are good to eat
Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face; si compterons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make so we-will-tell
d'autre. Sachiez que es autres trois journées oultre et
of-other Know that in-the other three day-journeys beyond and
plus .xv. (quinze) milles, treuve l'en une cité qui a nom
more fifteen fifteen miles finds one a city which has name
Vuguen, en laquelle on fait grant planté de sucre. Ilz
Unken in which one makes great plenty of sugar They
sont ydolatres et ont monnoie de chartretes.
are idolaters and have money of little-charters
Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si dirons de
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So we-will-tell of
la noblesce de Fuguy.
the nobleness of Fuju

155 Cy dit de la noblesse de Fuguy.

Here tells of the nobleness of Fuju

Or sachiez que ceste cité de Fuguy est la clef de ce royaume,

Now know that this city of Fuju is the key of this kingdom

et appelle l'en ce regne Chonka, qui est aussi une des .ix.

and calls one this realm Chonka which is also one of-the nine

(neuf) parties de la contrée de Mangy. En ceste cité fait l'en

nine parts of the country of Manzi In this city makes one

grans marchandises et grans mestiers. Ilz sont ydolatres et

great merchandises and great trades They are idolaters and

sont au grant Kaan. Et y demeurent grant quantité de gens

are of-the great Khan And there dwell great quantity of people

d'armes du grant seigneur, pour ce que li royaumes soit bien

of-arms of-the great lord for this that the kingdom be well

gardés. Car ceste cité est acoustumée de soy reveller legierement.

guarded For this city is accustomed of itself rebelling lightly

Et sachiez que parmy ceste cité s'en va un grant

And know that through this city itself-thence goes a great

fleuve, qui est bien larges une mille. On fait en ceste cité

river which is fully wide a mile One makes in this city

grant quantité de sucre; et si y fait on grans marchandises

great quantity of sugar and so there makes one great merchandises

de perles et de pierres. Car pluseurs nefs de Ynde y

of pearls and of stones For several ships of India there

viennent qui amenent moult de chieres marchandises.

come which bring many of dear merchandises

Pres de ceste cité est li pors de Kayteu qui entre en

Near of this city is the port of Kayteu which enters into

la mer occeanne. Et va ledit fleuve à ce port. Ilz ont

the sea ocean And goes the-said river to this port They have

moult beaux jardins et delitables. Et si est moult belle

very fine gardens and delightful And so it-is very fine

cité et bien ordonnée, où y a de toutes choses pour
city and well ordered where there is of all things for
vivre grant planté et bon marchie.
living great plenty and good market

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si irons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So we-will-go
avant.
forward

Cy dit de la cité de Çaiton. 156
Here tells of the city of Zaiton

Or sachiez que quant l'en se part de Fuguy, et l'en a
Now know that when one himself departs from Fuju and one has
passé le fleuve et chevauchie cinq journées par moult beau
crossed the river and ridden five day-journeys through very fine
pays, adonc treuve l'en la cité de Çayton qui moult est grant
country then finds one the city of Zaiton which very is great
et noble, et est subgecte au Fuguy. Elle est au grant Kaan.
and noble and is subject to-the Fuju It is of-the great Khan
Ilz ont monnoie de chartre, et sont ydolatres. Et sachiez que
They have money of charter and are idolaters And know that
en ceste cité est le port de Çayton, là où toutes les nefs
in this city is the port of Zaiton there where all the ships
d'Ynde viennent, qui amainent les espiceries et les autres
of-India come which bring the spiceries and the other
chieres marchandises. Et c'est le port où tuit li marchant du
dear merchandises And this-is the port where all the merchants of-the
Mangy arrivent; si que, pour ce y vient si grant quantité de
Manzi arrive so that for this there comes so great quantity of
marchandises et de pierres précieuses et de perles, que c'est
merchandises and of stones precious and of pearls that it-is
une merveilleuse chose; et de ce port se portent en la
a marvelous thing and from this port themselves carry into the

contrée du Mangy. Et vous di que, pour une nef de poivre
country of-the Manzi And to-you I-tell that for a ship of pepper
qui va en Alixandre, ou autre part, pour porter en terre de
which goes to Alexandria or other part for to-carry into land of
Crestiens, en vient à ce port de Çayton cent et plus; si
Christians thereof comes to this port of Zaiton hundred and more so
que le grant Kaan reçoit à cest port moult grant droiture.
that the great Khan receives at this port very great due

Or sachiez que de toutes les marchandises qui y
Now know that of all the merchandises which there
viennent a, li Sires, la .xe. (dixme) par tout de droit;
come has the Lord the tenth tithe by all of right
c'est de pierres precieuses, et de perles et de marchandises
this-is of stones precious and of pearls and of merchandises
deliées. Et du poivre .xliiij. pour .c. (44 pour
fine And of-the pepper forty-four for a-hundred 44 for
100); et de lingnaloel, et du cendal et d'autres grosses
100 and of aloe-wood and of-the sendal and of-other coarse
marchandises, du .c. .l. (50 pour 100).
merchandises of-the hundred fifty 50 for 100

Il y a de tous vivres grant planté. Et sachiez que
It there is of all victuals great plenty And know that
pres de ceste cité de Çayton a une autre cité qui a
near of this city of Zaiton there-is an other city which has
nom Tiunguy, là où l'en fait moult d'escuelles et de
name Tiunju there where one makes many of-bowls and of
pourcelainnes qui sont moult belles. Et en nul autre port on
porcelains which are very fine And in any other port one
n'en fait, fors que en cestuy; et en y a l'en moult
not-thereof makes except that in this-one and thereof there has one very
bon marchie. Ilz ont en ceste cité de Tyunguy un autre
good market They have in this city of Tiunju an other

langaige par eulx. Et vous dy que le grant Kaan a bien
language by themselves And to-you I-tell that the great Khan has fully
aussi grans drois, et aussi grans rentes de ce royaume de
also great dues and also great revenues from this kingdom of
Concha, et plus encore qu'il n'a du royaume de Quinsay.
Chonka and more further than-he has from-the kingdom of Quinsai

Nous ne vous avons conté des .ix. (neuf) royaumes du
We not to-you have told of-the nine nine kingdoms of-the
Mangy que des trois: c'est Quinsay, Yanguy et Fuguy.
Manzi but of-the three this-is Quinsai Yangju and Fuju
Des autres .vi. (six) royaumes vous en sarions nous bien
Of-the other six six kingdoms to-you thereof would-know we well
conter; mais trop seroit longue la matiere; si nous en
tell but too-much would-be long the matter so we thereof
tairons atant.
will-be-silent at-that

Et vous avez bien tout entendu le fait du Catay, et
And you have well all understood the matter of-the Cathay and
du Mangy et autres contrées maintes, si comme dessus est
of-the Manzi and other countries many so as above is
contenu; et des manieres des gens, et des marchandises;
contained and of-the manners of-the people and of-the merchandises
de l'or, et de l'argent; et de toutes les autres choses que
of the-gold and of the-silver and of all the other things which
l'en y treuve. Et pour ce que le livre ne est mie encore
one there finds And for this that the book not is at-all yet
acompli de ce que nous y voulons mettre: car il y fault
accomplished of that which we there wish to-put for it there lacks
tout le fait des Yndiens, et des grans choses d'Inde, qui
all the matter of-the Indians and of-the great things of-India which
bien sont choses de raconter; car moult sont merveilleuses.
well are things to tell for very they-are marvelous

Mais c'est des choses toutes veritables, sans nul mensonge.
But it-is of-the things all true without any lie
Et nous les mettrons en escript, ainsi comme Messire Pol
And we them will-put in writing thus as My-lord Pol
le raconta, qui bien le sçot, car il demoura tant en Ynde,
it told who well it knew for he dwelt so-long in India
et tant encercha et demanda de leurs manieres et de
and so-much searched and asked of their manners and of
leurs condicions que je vous di que oncques un homme
their conditions that I to-you tell that ever a man
seul ne sçot tant, ne ne vit tant comme il fist.
alone not knew so-much nor not saw so-much as he did

XXII · THE SHIPS OF INDIA AND THE ISLE OF CIPANGU

The book now turns to India and first describes its ships: fir planks nailed with iron, four masts, fifty or sixty cabins, two hundred mariners and oars worked by four men each, with barges and boats in tow, and a new layer of planks added each year up to six. Cipangu lies fifteen hundred miles out to sea, so rich in gold that its lord's palace is roofed and floored with it. Kublai sent two barons with a great fleet to take it, but a north wind wrecked the fleet, the barons quarreled, and thirty thousand men were left on a barren islet.

157 Cy commence des merveilles qui sont en Ynde.
Here begins of-the marvels which are in India
Puis que nous vous avons conté des contrées qui cy
Since that we to-you have told of-the countries which here
devant sont escriptes, nous vous conterons d'Ynde et des
before are written we to-you will-tell of-India and of-the
merveilles qui y sont; et dirons premierement de leurs
marvels which there are and will-tell first of their

nefs en quoy vont et viennent li marchant par les isles
ships in which go and come the merchants through the isles
d'Ynde. Sachiez que elles sont faites de sapin; et si ont
of-India Know that they are made of fir and so have
une couverture seulement. Et si a bien chascune .l. et
a deck only And so has fully each fifty and
.lx. chambres là où demeurent les marchans à grant aise.
sixty cabins there where dwell the merchants at great ease
Et si ont un timon et quatre arbres; et ont encore
And so they-have a rudder and four masts and have further
aucunes fois deux autres arbres qu'il mettent et ostent
some times two other masts which-they put and remove
à leur voulenté. Et sont ces nefs clouées de bons clous
at their will And are these ships nailed with good nails
de fer. Elles ont deux estaiges l'un sur l'autre; et ne
of iron They have two stories the-one upon the-other and not
sont point empoiées; car ilz n'ont point de pois; mais
are whit pitched for they not-have whit of pitch but
de chanvre et d'uille d'arbre meslée ensamble les oignent,
with hemp and with-oil of-tree mixed together them they-anoint
et tiennent moult fort. Et sachiez que, en chascune des
and they-hold very strongly And know that in each of-the
grans nefs convient bien .ii. cens mariniers. Mais elles sont
great ships behooves fully two hundred mariners But they are
moult grans; car elles portent bien .v. mille ou .vi. mille
very great for they carry fully five thousand or six thousand
charges de poivre. Et si vous di que elles vont à avirons
loads of pepper And so to-you I-tell that they go with oars
quant elles n'ont vent. Et ont si grans avirons qu'il
when they not-have wind And they-have so great oars that-it
y convient à chascun quatre mariniers au ramer. Et a,
there behooves at each four mariners at-the rowing And has

chascune grant nef, deux barges apres lui; de quarante ou de
each great ship two barges after it of forty or of
cinquante mariniers, en chascune, qui vont à avirons; qui
fifty mariners in each which go with oars which
aident à traire la grant nef; et bien .x. bateaux qui font la
help to draw the great ship and fully ten boats which make the
pourveance de la grant nef: si comme d'ancrer, de prendre
provisioning of the great ship so as of-anchoring of taking
poissons, et de pourvoir à la necessité de la grant nef. Et
fish and of providing to the need of the great ship And
quant la nef va à voile, si se loient ces petis bateaulx
when the ship goes by sail so themselves bind these little boats
l'un à l'autre à la nef. Ainsi les emmaine apres elle; mais
the-one to the-other to the ship Thus them it-leads after it but
les deux barges ont leurs voiles pour singler et ce que
the two barges have their sails for to-sail and that which
mestier leur est, ainsi comme la grant nef. Et sachiez que
need to-them is thus as the great ship And know that
quant ces nefs s'appareillent, c'est, chascun an, une fois; il
when these ships themselves-make-ready this-is each year one time they
les enforcent d'un ays bien blavée et bien ointé, et adjontié
them strengthen with-a plank well planed and well anointed and joined
aux autres, selon la maniere que les premieres ays furent
to-the others according-to the manner that the first planks were
premierement ensamble conjointes et liées; et aux barges
first together joined and bound and to-the barges
aussi qui ont, à part eux, voiles pour singler, comme dit
also which have at part them sails for to-sail as said
est, et ce que mestier l'en est, ainsi comme la grant nef.
is and that which need to-them is thus as the great ship
Et sachiez que cestui enforcement qu'il font, chascun an,
And know that this strengthening which-they make each year

en les nefs, es lieu où il a necessité, ne se fait que
in the ships in-the place where it there-is need not itself does but
par certains ans; et ce est jusques à six ays. Car, oultre,
for certain years and this is as-far-as to six planks For beyond
il ne les renforcent plus par celle maniere. Mais puis
they not them reinforce more in that manner But after
qu'elle aura six ays l'une sur l'autre, ilz ne la mainent
that-it will-have six planks the-one upon the-other they not it lead
pas en haulte mer; ains s'en aident es basses
at-all into high sea but themselves-thereof aid in-the shallow
eaues, tant comme elles pevent durer; et puis la deffont.
waters as-long as they can last and then it they-undo

Or vous ay conté des nefs qui vont par la mer
Now to-you I-have told of-the ships which go through the sea
occeanne, et par les isles d'Ynde; si dirons avant des
ocean and through the isles of-India so we-will-tell forward of-the
merveilles du pays d'Ynde.
marvels of-the country of-India

Cy commence de l'isle de Sypangu. 158
Here begins of the-isle of Cipangu

Sypangu est une isle en Levant qui est en la haulte
Cipangu is an isle in East which is in the high
mer, loings de la terre ferme mille cinq cens milles; et
sea far from the land firm thousand five hundred miles and
est moult grandisme isle. Les gens sont blans et de belle
is very very-great isle The people are white and of fair
maniere. Ilz sont idolastres, et se tiennent par eux;
manner They are idolaters and themselves hold by themselves
et si vous dy qu'il ont tant d'or que c'est sans fin; car
and so to-you I-tell that-they have so-much of-gold that it-is without end for
ilz le treuvent en leurs isles. Ilz sont pou de marchans qui
they it find in their isles They are few of merchants who

là voisent, pour ce que c'est si loings de la terre ferme.
there go for this that it-is so far from the land firm
Si que pour ceste raison leur habonde l'or oultre mesure.
So that for this reason to-them abounds the-gold beyond measure
Et vous conteray une grant merveille du palais du
And to-you I-will-tell a great marvel of-the palace of-the
seigneur de ceste isle. Sachiez qu'il a un grant palais qui est
lord of this isle Know that-he has a great palace which is
tous couvers d'or fin, en la maniere comme sont couvertes
all covered with-gold fine in the manner as are covered
nos eglises, de plomb; si que ce vault tant que à paines
our churches with lead so that this is-worth so-much that with pains
le pourroit on compter. Et encore tuit li pavement du palais
it could one count And further all the pavement of-the palace
et des chambres sont tuit d'or, de pierres de taille espesse
and of-the chambers are all of-gold of stones of cut thick
bien deux doie, et les fenestres aussi; si que cest palais est
fully two fingers and the windows also so that this palace is
de si desmesurée richesse que nulz ne le pourroit croire. Ilz
of so beyond-measure richness that anyone not it could believe They
ont gelines rouges qui moult sont bonnes à mengier; et si
have hens red which very are good to eat and so
en ont assez; et ont aussi assez de pierres precieuses.
thereof they-have plenty and have also plenty of stones precious
Et si vous dy que pour la grant richesse, que on conta à
And so to-you I-tell that for the great richness which one told to
Cublay Kaan, qui estoit en ceste isle, se pensa il de faire la
Kublai Khan which was in this isle himself thought he of having it
prendre. Si y envoya deux de ses barons atout grant quantité
taken So there he-sent two of his barons with-all great quantity
de navie; et grant planté de gent à cheval et à pié. Et
of shipping and great plenty of people on horse and on foot And

nommoit on l'un des barons Abacan, et l'autre Jousainchin.
named one the-one of-the barons Abakan and the-other Vonsamchin
Ces deux barons estoient sages et vaillans; et se partirent
These two barons were wise and valiant and themselves departed
atout leur atour du port de Çaiton, et de Quinsay; et
with-all their array from-the port of Zaiton and from Quinsai and
se mistrent en mer. Et tant nagierent qu'ilz vindrent en
themselves put to sea And so-long they-sailed that-they came to
ladite isle; et descendirent à terre; et prirent tout le plain et
the-said isle and descended to land and took all the plain and
les vilaiges; mais nul chastel, ne nulle cité ne pristrent à leur
the villages but any castle nor any city not they-took at their
venue. Si leur advint une mescheance telle que je vous diray.
coming So to-them happened a mischance such as I to-you will-tell

Sachiez que li vens de tramontaine venta moult fort, et
Know that the wind of north blew very strongly and
fist en ceste isle moult grant dommage, pour ce qu'il y
made in this isle very great damage for this that-it there
avoit pou de pors. Et venta si fort que la navie du grant
was few of ports And it-blew so strongly that the shipping of-the great
Kaan ne pot durer. Et quant ilz virent ce, ilz penserent que
Khan not could endure And when they saw this they thought that
se il demouroient ainsi, leur navie seroit toute perdue. Si
if they remained thus their shipping would-be all lost So
monterent en leur navie et firent voiles, et se partirent.
they-mounted into their shipping and made sail and themselves departed
Et quant ilz furent aucques alez, ilz trouverent une petite
And when they were somewhat gone they found a little
isle; si feurent à icelle, non mie de leur gré. Si brisa leur
isle so they-were at it not at-all of their will So broke their
navie, et périt grant multitude de l'ost; si que il n'en
shipping and perished great multitude of the-host so that it not-thereof

eschappa que environ .xxx. mille hommes, qui se
escaped but about thirty thousand men who themselves
reculerent sur ceste isle. Si se tenoient comme mors,
drew-back upon this isle So themselves they-held as dead
car ilz n'avoient nulle vitaille, ne nul conseil, et avoient
for they not-had any victual nor any counsel and had
grant angoisse, pour ce que aucunes de leurs nefs, qui
great anguish for this that some of their ships which
estoient eschappées, s'en aloient en leur pays, grant
were escaped themselves-thence went into their country great
aleure, et ne faisoient nul semblant de retourner. Et c'estoit
pace and not made any semblance of returning And this-was
pour ce que les deux barons chevetaines de l'ost haioient
for this that the two barons captains of the-host hated
moult l'un l'autre, et se porterent grant envie; car
much the-one the-other and themselves bore great envy for
le baron, qui eschappa, ne fit oncques semblant de vouloir
the baron who escaped not made ever semblance of wishing
retourner vers son compaignon qui estoit demourés sur
to-return toward his companion who was remained upon
l'isle, si comme vous avez oy; car il povoit bien retourner,
the-isle so as you have heard for he could well return
quant li vens fu passés, qui ne dura gaires. Mais il ne
when the wind was passed which not lasted much But he not
le fist pas; ains s'en ala tout droit en son pays. Et
it did at-all but himself-thence went all straight into his country And
sachiez que celle isle où ceulx estoient eschappés estoit non
know that that isle where those were escaped was not
habitable; car il n'y avoit nulle autre creature que eulx.
habitable for it not-there was any other creature than they

Or vous dirons de ceulx qui sont eschappés à leur
Now to-you we-will-tell of those who are escaped in their
navie, et vous dirons aussy de ceulx qui demourerent en
shipping and to-you we-will-tell also of those who remained on
l'isle.
the-isle

XXIII · THE STRANDED ARMY; THE IDOLS AND THE ISLES

The king of Cipangu landed to take the stranded army, but the Tartars slipped around, seized his ships, sailed to the main isle, and took its chief city with the king's own banners. They held it seven months before surrendering in 1279. The Khan beheaded the baron who had fled and put the other to death. Eight islanders could not be beheaded because of stones under their skin. The idols here have many heads and hands, and captives who cannot pay ransom are eaten. The sea of Chin holds 7,459 isles rich in spices, a year's voyage there and back.

Comment les hommes du grant Kaan, qui estoient en 159
How the men of-the great Khan who were on
l'isle, pristrent la cité de leurs ennemis.
the-isle took the city of their enemies

Sachiez que ceulx qui estoient remes en l'isle, qui estoient
Know that those who were remained on the-isle who were
bien trente mille personnes, si comme je vous ay conté,
fully thirty thousand persons so as I to-you have told
se tenoient tuit mort, pour ce que il ne veoient en nulle
themselves held all dead for this that they not saw in any
maniere comment ilz peussent eschapper. Et quant le roy de
manner how they might escape And when the king of
la grant isle sçot comment ilz estoient sur l'isle eschappé
the great isle knew how they were upon the-isle escaped

de la fortune; et que l'autre ost estoit toute desbartée et
from the storm and that the-other host was all scattered and
fuie, si en fu moult liez, et fist assembler toutes les nefs
fled so thereof was very glad and had assembled all the ships
qui estoient en la grant isle, et alerent oudit islet, et
which were in the great isle and went to-the-said islet and
descendirent tout entour. Et quant les Tartars les virent venir,
landed all around And when the Tartars them saw come
et qu'ilz estoient tous descendus à terre, si qu'ilz n'avoient
and that-they were all landed on ground so that-they not-had
laissié nulle garde à leurs nefs, comme ceulx qui pou en
left any guard on their ships as those who little thereof
savoient de tel fait; eulx comme sages, firent une meute,
knew of such deed they as wise made a feint
ensamblant qu'ilz fuioient, et s'en vindrent aux nefs
seeming that-they fled and themselves-thence came to-the ships
de leurs ennemis, et monterent sus maintenant, et le firent
of their enemies and mounted on at-once and it did
moult legierement pour ce qu'ilz trouverent nulle deffense.
very lightly for this that-they found no defense
Et quant ilz furent es nefs, ilz se partirent tantost,
And when they were in-the ships they themselves departed at-once
et alerent en la grant isle, et descendirent maintenant
and went to the great isle and landed at-once
à terre, et porterent les confanons et les enseignes du
on ground and carried the banners and the standards of-the
seigneur en la ditte isle, et s'en vindrent à la maistre
lord into the said isle and themselves-thence came to the master
cité. Et ceulx de la cité, qui de ce ne se prenoient
city And those of the city who of this not themselves took
garde, et qui veoient leurs banieres venir, cuidoient que ce
care and who saw their banners come thought that these

feussent leur gent et les laissierent entrer ens. Et cilz, des
were their people and them let enter in And they from
maintenant qu'ilz y furent entrés, si pristrent les forteresses
at-once that-they there were entered so took the fortresses
et chacierent hors tous ceulx qu'ilz trouverent, fors les
and drove out all those whom-they found except the
belles femmes qu'ilz retindrent pour eulx. Si que, en telle
fair women whom-they kept for themselves So that in such
maniere pristrent celle cité, li homme du grant Kaan. Et
manner took that city the men of-the great Khan And
quant le roy de la grant isle et son ost virent que ilz avoient
when the king of the great isle and his host saw that they had
perdu la cité et leur navie, si en orent grant douleur, et
lost the city and their shipping so thereof had great sorrow and
revindrent en aucunes nefs qui leur estoient demourées; et
came-back in some ships which to-them were remained and
s'en vindrent à leur isle. Et fist le roy maintenant
themselves-thence came to their isle And had the king at-once
assambler tout son ost, et fist assegier la cité tout entour en
assembled all his host and had besieged the city all around in
telle maniere que nulz n'y povoit entrer ni issir. Ceulx de
such manner that anyone not-there could enter nor issue Those of
dedens se tindrent .vii. mois et pourchassoient jour et
within themselves held seven months and strove day and
nuit comment ilz le peussent faire savoir au grant Kaan; mais
night how they it might make know to-the great Khan but
tout ce ne leur valoit neant; car ilz ne lui povoient faire
all this not to-them availed anything for they not to-him could make
assavoir. Et quant ilz virent qu'il ne se povoient plus
know And when they saw that-they not themselves could more
tenir, ilz se rendirent sauve leurs vies, en telle maniere
hold they themselves rendered save their lives in such manner

qu'ilz ne se pourroient jamais partir de l'isle. Et ce
that-they not themselves could ever-more depart from the-isle And this
advint en l'an notre Seigneur mil .ii.c.lxxix. (1279)
happened in the-year our Lord thousand two-hundred-seventy-nine 1279
ans. Le grant Kaan fist tolir la teste à celluy baron qui
years The great Khan had taken-off the head to that baron who
s'en estoit fuis mauvaisement. Et puis fist que l'autre,
himself-thence was fled wickedly And then he-had that the-other
qui demoura en l'isle, il fist mourir, pour ce qu'il ne s'estoit
who remained on the-isle he had die for this that-he not himself-was
mie bien portés, ainsi comme preudoms d'armes deust faire
at-all well borne thus as worthy-man of-arms ought to-do

Encore vous conteray je une autre merveilleuse chose qui
Further to-you will-tell I an other marvelous thing which
avint en ce fait, que je avoie oublié. Sachiez que au
happened in this deed which I had forgotten Know that at-the
commencement que l'ost du grant Kaan ala en la grant
beginning that the-host of-the great Khan went to the great
isle et que ilz pristrent le plain ainsi comme je vous ay
isle and that they took the plain thus as I to-you have
conté dessus, ilz pristrent par force une tour de ceulx de
told above they took by force a tower of those of
l'isle qui ne s'estoient voulu rendre, et trenchierent aux
the-isle who not themselves-had wished to-render and cut-off from-the
hommes les têtes, fors qu'à .viij. à qui on ne les povoit
men the heads except but-to eight to whom one not them could
taillier en nulle maniere; et ce estoit par vertu de pierres
cut in any manner and this was by virtue of stones
qu'ilz avoient en leurs bras entre la char et la pel, si bien
which-they had in their arms between the flesh and the skin so well
mises que elles ne pairoient dehors. Et ces pierres estoient si
put that they not appeared outside And these stones were so

enchantées et avoient telle vertu que cil qui les portoit ne
enchanted and had such virtue that he who them carried not
povoit mourir de fer. Et quant il fu dit aux barons, si les
could die by iron And when it was said to-the barons so them
firent occire de bastons. Et quant ilz furent mors, si firent
they-had killed with clubs And when they were dead so they-had
traire de chascun la pierre et les tindrent moult chieres.
drawn from each the stone and them held very dear

Or vous lairons de ce; et retournerons à nostre matiere.
Now you we-will-leave of this and will-return to our matter

Cy devise de la manière des ydoles. 160
Here describes of the manner of-the idols

Or sachiez que les ydoles du Catay et du Mangy et
Now know that the idols of-the Cathay and of-the Manzi and
celles d'Inde sont tous d'une maniere. Et y a telle ydole
those of-India are all of-one manner And there is such idol
qui a chief de buef, et telle qui a chief de porc, de
which has head of ox and such which has head of pig of
chien ou de mouton, et de pluseurs autres façons. Et si
dog or of sheep and of several other fashions And so
en y a de telles qui ont quatre testes; et telles trois,
thereof there are of such which have four heads and such three
dont il y a sur chascune espaule une. Et si y a aussi
of-which it there is upon each shoulder one And so there are also
de telles qui ont quatre mains; de telles dix, et de telles
of such which have four hands of such ten and of such
mille. En celles de mille mains ont ilz plus grant foy que
thousand In those of thousand hands have they more great faith than
es autres. Et quant aucun crestien leur demande pour quoy
in-the others And when some Christian them asks for what
ilz font leurs ydoles desguisées et non semblable l'une aux
they make their idols disguised and not like the-one to-the

autres, ilz leur respondent que leurs ancestres les orent
others they to-them answer that their ancestors them had
si faites, et telles les laisseront à leurs enfants; et leurs
so made and such them will-leave to their children and their
enfans aux leurs. Et ainsi iront perpetuellement de l'un
children to-the theirs And thus they-will-go perpetually from the-one
à l'autre. Et sachiez que les fais de telz ydoles sont tant de
to the-other And know that the deeds of such idols are so-much of
deableries qu'il n'est pas bon du raconter. Et pour ce vous
devilries that-it not-is at-all good of-the telling And for this you
lairons de ces ydoles, et vous dirons des autres choses.
we-will-leave of these idols and to-you will-tell of-the other things

Mais tant vous dirons nous que (si) ceulx de ceste isle,
But so-much to-you will-tell we that if those of this isle
et tous les autres d'Inde prenoient aucun leur ennemy et
and all the others of-India took some their enemy and
ilz ne se povoient racheter de monnoie; si semondra, cil
they not themselves could ransom with money so will-summon he
qui aura le prisonnier, tous ses amis et tous ses parens,
who will-have the prisoner all his friends and all his kin
et occistrent l'homme; et puis le cuisent et le menguent,
and they-killed the-man and then him cook and him eat
et dient que c'est la meilleur char qui soit ou monde
and say that it-is the best meat which be in-the world

Or vous lairons de ce, et vous dirons d'autre chose.
Now you we-will-leave of this and to-you will-tell of-other thing

Sachiez que ceste mer, où sont ces isles de ceste part,
Know that this sea where are these isles of this part
s'apelle la mer de Cim, qui vault à dire: la mer qui est
itself-calls the sea of Chin which is-worth to say the sea which is
contre le Mangy. Car, ou langaige de ces isles, quant il
opposite the Manzi For in-the language of these isles when they

dient Cim, c'est à dire: le Mangy. Et si vous di que en
say Chin it-is to say the Manzi And so to-you I-tell that in
ceste mer de Cim qui est au levant, si comme dient les
this sea of Chin which is in-the east so as say the
pescheurs et les saiges mariniers de ceste contrée, il y a
fishermen and the wise mariners of this country it there is
.vii. mille quatre cens .lix. (7,459) isles, là où lesdis
seven thousand four hundred fifty-nine 7,459 isles there where the-said
mariniers vont; et pour ce le scevent ilz; car ilz ne font autre
mariners go and for this it know they for they not do other
chose que naigier par la mer. Et si vous di qu'il n'y
thing than sail through the sea And so to-you I-tell that-it not-there
a nulle de ces isles où il n'ait arbres moult bons et
is any of these isles where it not-there-be trees very good and
de grant oudour; si comme de lingaloel, et encore meilleur;
of great odor so as of aloe-wood and still better
et si y a aussi moult de manieres d'espices. Et vous di
and so there are also many of manners of-spices And to-you I-tell
que en ces isles naist le poivre blanc comme noifs à moult
that in these isles grows the pepper white as snow in very
grant planté. Si que c'est grant merveille des richesses qui
great plenty So that it-is great marvel of-the riches which
y sont: d'or, de pierres et de toutes espiceries. Mais elles
there are of-gold of stones and of all spiceries But they
sont si loings de terre ferme que à grant paine y puet
are so far from land firm that with great pain there can
l'en aler. Et quant les nefs de Çaiton et de Quinsay y
one go And when the ships of Zaiton and of Quinsai there
vont, ilz en ont moult grant gaain et moult grant prouffit.
go they thereof have very great gain and very great profit

Et vous dy qu'ilz y mettent un an à y aler; car
And to-you I-tell that-they there put a year to there go for
ilz vont l'iver et retournent l'esté. Car en ceste mer ne
they go the-winter and return the-summer For in this sea not
vente que deux vens; l'un qui les porte, et l'autre qui les
blows but two winds the-one which them carries and the-other which them
raporte. Et ces deux vens est l'un tout l'iver et l'autre
brings-back And these two winds is the-one all the-winter and the-other
tout l'esté. Et sachiez que ceste contrée est si loings
all the-summer And know that this country is so far
d'Inde que à y aler il faut loing tine. Et pour ce que
from-India that to there go it behooves long time And for this that
je vous ay dit que l'en appelle ceste mer: la mer de Cym;
I to-you have said that one calls this sea the sea of Chin
si est elle la grant mer Occident. Mais elle a ce nom ainsi
so is it the great sea Western But it has this name thus
comme on dist: la mer d'Angletierre en ce pays. Et aussi
as one says the sea of-England in this country And also
dit on ailleurs: la mer d'Inde; mais tout est la mer Occident.
says one elsewhere the sea of-India but all is the sea Western

Or nous partirons de ceste contrée pour ce que c'est
Now we will-depart from this country for this that it-is
bien desvoiables pays et estranges lieux. Et pour ce aussi
very out-of-the-way country and strange places And for this also
que ledit Messire Marc Pol n'y fu point. Et si vous di
that the-said My-lord Mark Pol not-there was at-all And so to-you I-tell
que le grant Kaan n'a que faire à eulx, ne ne lui
that the great Khan not-has anything to-do with them nor not to-him
rendent nul treu; ne riens ne font pour luy. Si retournerons
they-render any tribute nor anything not they-do for him So we-will-return
en Çaiton qui est commencement de la meneur Inde.
to Zaiton which is beginning of the lesser India

Fifteen hundred miles southwest of Zaiton lies Champa, whose aged king, when the Khan's baron Sogatu ravaged his land in 1278, offered himself as the Khan's man and sends him twenty elephants a year. No woman there may marry until the king has seen her, and in 1280 he had 326 children. Fifteen hundred miles farther lies Java, said to be the greatest island in the world, five thousand miles around and rich in pepper, nutmeg, and cloves; it pays tribute to no one, and the Khan has never been able to take it, so long and costly is the voyage.

Cy dist de la grant contrée de Cyamba. 161

Here tells of the great country of Champa

Sachiez que quant on se part du port de Çaiton

Know that when one himself departs from-the port of Zaiton

et on nage en occident vers garbin .M.v.c. (1500)

and one sails in west toward southwest a-thousand-five-hundred 1500

milles, adonc vient l'en en une contrée qui a nom Cyamba

miles then comes one into a country which has name Champa

qui moult est riche terre et ont roy par eulx et

which very is rich land and they-have king by themselves and

langaige aussy. Ilz sont ydolatres et font treu, au grant

language also They are idolaters and make tribute to-the great

Kaan, d'oliphans, chascun an; et autre chose ne lui donnent

Khan of-elephants each year and other thing not to-him they-give

que oliphans. Et vous diray pourquoy ilz font ce treu.

than elephants And to-you I-will-tell why they make this tribute

Il fu voir que en l'an .m.ii.c.lxxviij. (mil

It was true that in the-year a-thousand-two-hundred-seventy-eight thousand

deux cens soixante dix huit) ans de Crist, le grant Kaan

two hundred sixty ten eight years of Christ the great Khan

envoya un sien baron que l'en appeloit Sagatu atout moult

sent a his baron whom one called Sogatu with-all very

grant gent à cheval et à pié sur ce roy de Cyamba. Et
great people on horse and on foot upon this king of Champa And
commença, cil baron, à faire moult grant guerre au roy et
began that baron to make very great war on-the king and
à sa contrée. Le roys estoit de grant aage. Et, d'autre part, il
on his country The king was of great age And on-other part he
n'avoit mie si grant povoir de gent comme cil baron. Et quant
not-had at-all so great power of people as that baron And when
li roy vit que celluy baron destruisoit son regne, si en ot
the king saw that that baron destroyed his realm so thereof he-had
moult grant douleur. Si fist appareillier ses messaiges et
very great sorrow So he-had made-ready his envoys and
les envoya au grant Kaan. Et lui dirent: «Notre seigneur
them sent to-the great Khan And to-him they-said Our lord
li roys de Cyamba vous salue, comme son lige seigneur;
the king of Champa you greets as his liege lord
et vous fait assavoir qu'il est de grant aage, et que loing
and you makes know that-he is of great age and that long
temps a tenu son regne en paix. Et vous mande par nous
time he-has held his realm in peace And to-you sends-word by us
qu'il vuelt estre votre homme; et vous donra, chascun an,
that-he wishes to-be your man and to-you will-give each year
treu de tant d'oliphans comme il vous plaira. Et vous prie
tribute of so-many of-elephants as it to-you will-please And you prays
doulcement et vous crie mercy, que vous mandez à vostre
sweetly and to-you cries mercy that you send-word to your
baron et à ses gens que ilz ne gastent plus son regne, et
baron and to his people that they not waste more his realm and
qu'il se partent de sa terre laquelle sera, puis, en vostre
that-they themselves depart from his land which will-be then at your
commandement comme vostre, que il la tendra de vous.»
command as yours for he it will-hold from you

Et quant le grant Kaan oy ce que le roy li mandoit,
And when the great Khan heard that which the king to-him sent-word
si en ot pitié, et manda à son baron et à son ost
so thereof he-had pity and sent-word to his baron and to his host
qu'ilz se partissent de ce regne, et alaissent en autre
that-they themselves should-depart from this realm and should-go into other
pays pour conquerre. Et ceulx, des maintenant qu'ilz orent
country for to-conquer And those from at-once that-they had
le commandement du grant Kaan, si le firent. Si que
the command of-the great Khan so it did So that
cilz roys devint homs du grant Kaan en ceste maniere;
this king became man of-the great Khan in this manner
et lui fait, chascun an, treu de .xx. oliphans les plus
and to-him makes each year tribute of twenty elephants the most
beaux et les greigneurs que il puet avoir en son pays.
fine and the greatest that he can have in his country

Or vous lairons à conter de ce; si vous dirons l'affaire
Now you we-will-leave to tell of this so to-you we-will-tell the-affair
du roy Cyamba.
of-the king (of-)Champa

Sachiez que en ce regne nulle femme ne se puet marier
Know that in this realm any woman not herself can marry
se li roys ne l'a veue devant; et se elle lui plaist, il la
if the king not her-has seen before and if she to-him pleases he her
prent à femme; et se elle ne lui plaist, il lui donne du
takes to wife and if she not to-him pleases he to-her gives of-the
sien, tant que elle se puisse marier. Et sachiez que en l'an
his so-much that she herself may marry And know that in the-year
mil .ii. cens .iiii.xx. (deux cens quatre vingt) ans de Crist,
thousand two hundred four-score two hundred four score years of Christ
fut messire Marc Pol en ceste contrée; et à celluy temps avoit
was my-lord Mark Pol in this country and at that time had

li roys .iii. cens .xxvi. enfans que masles, que femelles. Et
the king three hundred twenty-six children what males what females And
en y avoit bien cent et .l. qui povoient porter armes.
thereof there were fully hundred and fifty who could bear arms
Il y a oliphans assez en ce regne. Et si ont grant bois
It there is elephants plenty in this realm And so they-have great woods
d'un fust noir que l'en appelle ybenus, de quoy on fait arches.
of-a wood black which one calls ebony of which one makes chests
Mais autre chose n'y a qui à conter face; si irons avant.
But other thing not-there is which to tell may-make so we-will-go forward

162 Cy dist de la grant isle de Javva.
Here tells of the great isle of Java

Quant on nage de Cyampa mille cinq cens milles pres
When one sails from Champa thousand five hundred miles near
midi, adonc vient on en une grant isle appellée Javva, que
south then comes one into a great isle called Java which
les mariniers de cette partie dient que c'est la greigneur isle
the mariners of this part say that it-is the greatest isle
qui soit ou monde. Car bien a de tour .v.m. (cinq
which be in-the world For well it-has of circuit five-thousand five
mille) milles. Elle est à un grant roy du pays, et n'en
thousand miles It is to a great king of-the country and not-thereof
fait treu à nulluy. Ilz sont ydolastres. Ceste isle est de trop
makes tribute to anyone They are idolaters This isle is of very
grant richesse. Ilz ont poivre noir, nois muguettes, garingal,
great richness They have pepper black nuts nutmeg galingale
cubebes, girofle et toutes autres espices. En celle isle a
cubebs cloves and all other spices In that isle there-is
bien grant quantité de navile et de marchans qui y achetent
fully great quantity of shipping and of merchants who there buy
et amainent grans marchandises dont ilz rapportent grant
and bring great merchandises from-which they bring-back great

gaing et prouffit. Et si vous di que le grant Kaan ne pot
gain and profit And so to-you I-tell that the great Khan not could
oncques avoir celle isle pour la longue voie qui y est, et
ever have that isle for the long way which there is and
pour le coust qu'il couvendroit au nagier. Li marchant de
for the cost which-it would-behoove at-the sailing The merchants of
Çayton et du Mangy en traient chascun an grant avoir.
Zaiton and of-the Manzi thereof draw each year great wealth
Or vous lairons de ceste isle et irons avant.
Now you we-will-leave of this isle and will-go forward

XXV · THE LESSER JAVA

Past Sondur, Condur, Locac with its brazilwood and gold, and Pentam, the lesser Java is two thousand miles around and holds eight kingdoms, so far south that the polestar cannot be seen. In Ferlec the Saracens have converted the city folk, but the hill people eat men. Basman has unicorns, ugly beasts with a horn and a spiny tongue, and small apes that men dry and sell as pygmies. In Samara, where Mark waited five months for the weather, they draw wine from trees. In Dagroian the sick are smothered and eaten, while Lambri has men with tails and Fansur trees that yield flour.

Cy devise de l'isle de Sandur et de celle de Condur. 163
Here describes of the-isle of Sondur and of that of Condur
Quant on se part de Cyamba et on nage .vii.c.
When one himself departs from Champa and one sails seven-hundred
(sept cens) milles contre midi, adonc treuve l'en deux isles:
seven hundred miles toward south then finds one two isles
l'une grant, et l'autre meneur. L'une a nom Sandur et
the-one great and the-other lesser The-one has name Sondur and
l'autre Condur. Et pour ce qu'il n'y a chose qui à conter
the-other Condur And for this that-it not-there is thing which to tell

face, irons avant à une aultre contrée que on appelle
may-make we-will-go forward to an other country which one calls
Soucat, qui est .v.c. (cinq cens) milles oultre Sandur.
Locac which is five-hundred five hundred miles beyond Sondur
Et est bonne contrée et riche et y a roy. Ilz sont
And it-is good country and rich and there is king They are
ydolastres et ont langaige par eulx; et ne font treuaige
idolaters and have language by themselves and not make tribute
à nulluy, pour ce qu'ilz sont en pays si loingtaing et si
to anyone for this that-they are in country so distant and so
desvoiable que nulz ne pourroit aller sur eulx. Et se on y
out-of-the-way that anyone not could go upon them And if one there
povoit aller, le grant Kaan les soumeist tous à sa seigneurie.
could go the great Khan them would-subject all to his lordship

En ceste contrée naist le bresil dont nous usons à grant
In this country grows the brazil which we use in great
planté. Ilz ont or aussi oultre mesure. Et si ont oliphans et
plenty They have gold also beyond measure And so they-have elephants and
venoisons assez. En cest regne prent on toutes les pourcelaines
venisons plenty In this realm takes one all the porcelain-shells
que on despens par toutes les contrées que je vous ay dit.
which one spends through all the countries which I to-you have said

Autre chose n'y a, se non que c'est moult sauvaiges
Other thing not-there is except not that it-is very wild
lieux, et pou de gent y vont. Et aussi ly rois ne vuelt
places and few of people there go And also the king not wishes
que nulz y voist pour ce que l'en ne sache son tresor
that anyone there go for this that one not may-know his treasure
ne sa condicion. Si vous conterons de l'isle de Pontain.
nor his condition So to-you we-will-tell of the-isle of Pentam

Cy devise de l'isle de Pontain. 164

Here describes of the-isle of Pentam

Encore sachiez que quant on se part de Soucat et

Further know that when one himself departs from Locac and

on nage .v.c. (cinq cens) milles par midi, si treuve

one sails five-hundred five hundred miles by south so finds

on une isle qui a nom Pontain qui moult est sauvaiges

one an isle which has name Pentam which very is wild

lieux. Tous li bois sont arbres de grant oudeur.

places All the woods are trees of great odor

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si nagerons

Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So we-will-sail

encore .lx.m. (soixante milles) parmy ces deux isles que je

further sixty-miles sixty miles through these two isles which I

vous ay dit; esquelles soixante milles n'y a que quatre

to-you have said in-which sixty miles not-there is but four

pas d'eaue; si qu'il convient que les grans nefs qui y

paces of-water so that-it behooves that the great ships which there

passent lievent leur timon. Et quant on est allé .lx.m.

pass raise their rudder And when one is gone sixty-miles

(soixante milles) et encore .xxx. (trente) avant, adonc treuve

sixty miles and further thirty thirty forward then finds

l'en une isle qui est royaume et a nom Maliur. Ilz ont

one an isle which is kingdom and has name Malaiur They have

roy et ont langaige par eulx. La cité est belle et noble,

king and have language by themselves The city is fair and noble

et si y fait on grans marchandises. Ilz ont espiceries

and so there makes one great merchandises They have spiceries

de toutes manieres, et toutes autres choses pour vivre.

of all manners and all other things for living

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face; si irons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make so we-will-go
avant.
forward

165 Cy dist de la meneur isle de Java.
Here tells of the lesser isle of Java

Quant on se part de l'isle de Maliur, et on nage
When one himself departs from the-isle of Malaiur and one sails
quatre vingt dix milles, adonc treuve en l'isle de Javva la
four score ten miles then finds one the-isle of Java the
meneur; mais elle n'est mie si petite qu'elle n'ait de tour
lesser but it not-is at-all so little that-it not-have of circuit
deux milles [milles]. Et si vous conteray de ceste isle l'affaire.
two thousand miles And so to-you I-will-tell of this isle the-affair

Sachiez que sus ceste isle a .viij. royaumes et .viij.
Know that upon this isle there-are eight kingdoms and eight
roys couronnés. Ilz sont tuit ydolastres; et si a, chascun
kings crowned They are all idolaters and so has each
royaume, son langaige par soy. Il y a en ceste isle grant
kingdom its language by itself It there is in this isle great
quantité d'espiceries. Et si vous conteray la maniere de la
quantity of-spiceries And so to-you I-will-tell the manner of the
plus grant partie de ces huit royaumes. Mais je vous diray
most great part of these eight kingdoms But I to-you will-tell
avant une chose. Et sachiez que ceste isle est si vers midi
first a thing And know that this isle is so toward south
que l'estoille tremontainne n'y apert.
that the-star north not-there appears

Or nous retournerons à notre matiere et vous conterons
Now we will-return to our matter and to-you will-tell
tout avant du royaume de Ferlec.
all first of-the kingdom of Ferlec

Sachiez que en ce royaume hantent si souvent li Sarrasin
Know that in this kingdom frequent so often the Saracens
qu'ilz ont convertis ceulx du pays à la loy Mahommet. Mais
that-they have converted those of-the country to the law (of-)Mohammed But
ce sont cilz de la cité, car ceulx des montaignes vivent comme
these are those of the city for those of-the mountains live like
bestes et menguent char d'hommes, et toutes autres chars, et
beasts and eat flesh of-men and all other meats and
aourent diverses choses. Et quant ilz se lievent le matin,
worship diverse things And when they themselves rise the morning
la premiere chose qu'ilz voient, celle aourent il tout le jour.
the first thing that-they see that they-worship they all the day

Or vous ay conté du royaume de Fellec, si vous
Now to-you I-have told of-the kingdom of Ferlec so to-you
conteray apres du royaume qui a nom Basmam.
I-will-tell after of-the kingdom which has name Basman

Quant on se part du royaume de Fellec si entre on
When one himself departs from-the kingdom of Ferlec so enters one
ou royaume de Basman, qui est aussi royaumes par luy.
into-the kingdom of Basman which is also kingdom by itself
Ilz ont langaige par eulx, et sont comme bestes, car ilz
They have language by themselves and are like beasts for they
ne tiennent nulle loy, et s'appellent pour le grant Kaan;
not hold any law and themselves-call for the great Khan
mais ilz ne lui font nul treu, pour ce qu'ilz sont si loings.
but they not to-him make any tribute for this that-they are so far
Ilz ont oliphans assez et unicornes aussi qui ne sont gaires
They have elephants plenty and unicorns also which not are much
grandes d'un oliphant; et ont le poil autel comme bufle, et
greater than-an elephant and have the hair such as buffalo and
les piés comme oliphant, et ont une corne enmy le front,
the feet like elephant and have a horn amid the forehead

blanche, moult grosse; et ne font nul mal de la corne, mais
white very thick and not do any harm with the horn but
de la langue; car elles ont la langue moult espineuse de
with the tongue for they have the tongue very spiny with
grans espines et longues; et si ont la teste autelle comme
great spines and long and so have the head such as
de sanglier et portent tousjours la teste enclinée vers terre.
of boar and carry always the head bowed toward ground
Elles demeurent voulentiers entour lacs et plantains. C'est
They dwell willingly around lakes and plantains It-is
une moult laide beste à veoir, et n'est pas telle comme
a very ugly beast to see and not-is at-all such as
nous disons de ça qu'elle se prent au giron d'une pucelle
we say of here that-it itself takes in-the lap of-a maiden
vierge; ains est tout le contraire. Et ont singes grant
virgin but is all the contrary And they-have apes great
quantité de pluseurs façons. Et si ont ostours tous noirs
quantity of several fashions And so they-have goshawks all black
comme corbeaux; et sont moult grant oysel et bons pour
as ravens and they-are very great bird and good for
oyseler. Et si vous di que ceulx qui aportent les petis
fowling And so to-you I-tell that those who bring the little
hommes et dient qu'ilz sont d'Inde: c'est grant mensonge;
men and say that-they are of-India this-is great lie
car ilz ne le sont mie; ains sont singes petis qui sont
for they not it are at-all but are apes little which are
en ceste isle, et vous diray comment ilz en oeuvrent.
in this isle and to-you I-will-tell how they thereof work

Il a en ceste isle une maniere de singes qui sont
It there-is in this isle a manner of apes which are
moult petit, et ont le visage autel comme un homme.
very little and have the face such as a man

Si les prennent et les poillent tous, fors que il leur
So them they-take and them pluck all except that they to-them
laissent du poil à la barbe et au poinil. Puis les
leave of-the hair at the beard and at-the groin Then them
laissent sechier, et les appareillent de saffren et d'autres
they-let dry and them prepare with saffron and with-other
choses; si que il samble que ilz soient hommes. Et ce
things so that it seems that they be men And this
n'est une verité. Car en toute Ynde, ne en autre pays
not-is a truth For in all India nor in other country
plus sauvaige, ne furent oncques telz hommes veus.
more wild not were ever such men seen

Nous ne vous dirons plus de cest royaume de Basman.
We not to-you will-tell more of this kingdom of Basman
Et vous dirons cy avant des autres l'un apres l'autre.
And to-you we-will-tell here forward of-the others the-one after the-other

Or sachiez que quant l'en se part du royaume de
Now know that when one himself departs from-the kingdom of
Basman on treuve un royaume qui a nom Samara, qui est
Basman one finds a kingdom which has name Samara which is
aussi en ceste isle meismes; ouquel royaume messire Marc Pol
also in this isle same in-which kingdom my-lord Mark Pol
demoura .v. mois pour le temps qui ne le laissoit aler avant.
dwelt five months for the weather which not him let go forward
Et si vous di encore que l'estoille de la tremontainne ne celle
And so to-you I-tell further that the-star of the north nor that
du maistre n'y aperent riens. Ilz s'appellent aussi pour le
of-the northwest not-there appear at-all They themselves-call also for the
grant Kaan. Demourant ledit messire Marc Pol en ceste isle
great Khan Dwelling the-said my-lord Mark Pol in this isle
pour le mal temps cinq mois, si descendirent à terre des
for the bad weather five months so they-landed on ground from-the

nefs, et firent chasteaulx de fust et forteresses là où ilz
ships and made castles of wood and fortresses there where they
demouroient pour doubtance de ces hommes bestiaulx qui
dwelt for fear of these men bestial who
menguent les gens. Il y a poissons assez, les meilleurs du
eat the people It there is fish plenty the best of-the
monde. Ilz n'ont nulz formens, ains vivent de ris; et si
world They not-have any wheats but live from rice and so
n'ont aussi nulz vins. Ilz ont ainsi comme je vous deviseray.
not-have also any wines They have thus as I to-you will-describe

Sachiez que ilz ont une maniere d'arbres, et quant ilz
Know that they have a manner of-trees and when they
vuellent vin si lui trenchent une branche, et mettent un pot
wish wine so to-it they-cut a branch and put a pot
bien grant au tronçon de l'arbre, là où la branche est
fully great at-the stump of the-tree there where the branch is
taillie; et en un jour et en une nuit s'emplit ledit pot. Et est
cut and in a day and in a night itself-fills the-said pot And it-is
moult bon à boire. Et en y a de blans et de vermaux.
very good to drink And thereof there are of white-ones and of red-ones
Les arbres sont semblables à petis datiers. Et si taillent quatre
The trees are like to little date-palms And so they-cut four
branches. Et quant la branche qu'ilz ont taillie ne gette plus
branches And when the branch which-they have cut not throws more
de cel vin, si arrousent d'aigue la racine, et un pou apres
of that wine so they-water with-water the root and a little after
recommence à geter. Ilz ont moult grant quantité de nois
it-begins-again to throw They have very great quantity of nuts
d'Inde moult grosses qui sont bonnes à mengier fresches.
of-India very big which are good to eat fresh

Or vous avons assez conté de cest royaume. Si vous
Now to-you we-have plenty told of this kingdom So to-you
dirons des autres.
we-will-tell of-the others

Et quant l'en se part de ce royaume de Samara, si
And when one himself departs from this kingdom of Samara so
treuve l'en l'autre qui a nom d'Angrinan. Il est royaume
finds one the-other which has name Dagroian It is kingdom
par soy; et si sont si preudommes gens; et sont ydolastres.
by itself and so they-are so worthy people and are idolaters
Ilz s'appellent pour le grant Kaan. Et vous conterons une
They themselves-call for the great Khan And to-you we-will-tell an
mauvaise coustume que ilz ont. Car quant aucuns d'eulx est
evil custom which they have For when someone of-them is
malade, si envoient querre leurs enchanteurs. Et ceulx leur
sick so they-send seek their enchanters And those to-them
demandent se le malade doit guerir ou non de celle maladie;
they-ask if the sick must recover or not from that malady
et se ilz dient que il doit guerir, si le laissent jusques à
and if they say that he must recover so him they-leave until to
tant qu'il soit gueris. Et se il doit mourir, si comme ilz
such-time that-he be cured And if he must die so as they
devinent, si envoient querre hommes, qui sont juges, à mettre
divine so they-send seek men who are judges to put
à mort ces malades qui sont jugies par enchanteurs qui
to death these sick who are judged by enchanters that-they
doivent mourir; et viennent; et mettent au malade tant
must die and they-come and put on-the sick so-many
de robes sur la bouche qu'ilz l'esteignent. Et quant il est
of robes upon the mouth that-they him-smother And when he is
mors, si le font cuire; si s'assamblent tous les parens au
dead so him they-have cooked so themselves-assemble all the kin of-the

mort et le menguent. Et si vous di que ilz succent les
dead and him eat And so to-you I-tell that they suck the
os si bien qu'il n'y demeure pas un grain de mouelle ne
bones so well that-it not-there remains at-all a grain of marrow nor
d'autre graisse dedans, pource que ilz dient que, se aucune
of-other fat within because that they say that if any
substance demouroit dedans les os, que elle feroit vers; et
substance remained within the bones that it would-make worms and
les vers mourroient par deffaulte de mengier. Ilz dient que
the worms would-die by default of eating They say that
de la mort de ces vers l'ame du mort en seroit chargiée;
of the death of these worms the-soul of-the dead thereof would-be charged
si que, pour ce, ilz menguent tout. Et quant ilz ont ainsi
so that for this they eat all And when they have thus
mengié, si amassent les os, et les mettent en belles arches,
eaten so they-gather the bones and them put in fine chests
et les portent, et les pendent aus grans cavernes des
and them carry and them hang in-the great caverns of-the
montaignes, en tel lieu que beste ne autre chose ne les puisse
mountains in such place that beast nor other thing not them may
touchier. Et sachiez que, se il prenoient aucun autre homme
touch And know that if they took some other man
qui ne feust de leur contrée, et ne se peust racheter par
who not were of their country and not himself could ransom with
monnoie, ilz l'occirroient et le mengeroient maintenant. Si
money they him-would-kill and him would-eat at-once So
que ce est une moult mauvaise coustume et moult perilleuse.
that this is a very wicked custom and very perilous

Or vous ai conté de ce royaume; si vous dirai avant
Now to-you I-have told of this kingdom so to-you I-will-tell forward
des autres, si comme vous pourrez oyr.
of-the others so as you will-be-able hear

Et quant l'en se part de ce royaume, si treuve l'en
And when one himself departs from this kingdom so finds one
l'autre royaume qui a nom Lambry. Ilz s'appellent pour
the-other kingdom which has name Lambri They themselves-call for
le grant Kaan, et sont ydolatres. Ilz ont canfre assez,
the great Khan and are idolaters They have camphor plenty
et autres espiceries de toutes manieres. Si ont bresil à
and other spiceries of all manners So they-have brazil in
grant foison. Et vous di que ilz le semment; et quant
great plenty And to-you I-tell that they it sow and when
il est creus si comme petites vergettes, si le esrachent, et
it is grown so as little twigs so it they-uproot and
le mettent en autre lieu; et illeuc le laissent croistre trois
it put in other place and there it let grow three
ans; et puis l'esrachent atoutes les racines. Et sachiez que
years and then it-uproot with-all the roots And know that
ledit messire Marc Pol apporta la semence du bresil, qui
the-said my-lord Mark Pol brought the seed of-the brazil which
semoit, jusques à Venisse; et la fist semer; et n'en
he-sowed as-far-as to Venice and it he-had sown and not-thereof
crust riens; et je croy que ce fu pour le lieu qui est froit.
grew anything and I believe that this was for the place which is cold

Encore sachiez que en cest royaume de Lambry si a
Further know that in this kingdom of Lambri so there-are
hommes qui ont queues bien du long d'une pausme,
men who have tails fully of-the length of-a palm
et ne sont point pelues. Et ces hommes demeurent
and not are whit hairy And these men dwell
es montaignes, et sont ainsi comme gens sauvaiges; la
in-the mountains and are thus as people wild the

queue est bien si grosse comme celle d'un chien. Ilz ont
tail is fully so thick as that of-a dog They have
unicornes assez; et ont chassoisons et venoisons assez.
unicorns plenty and have huntings and venisons plenty
Or vous ay ore conté de ce royaume de Lambry. Si
Now to-you I-have now told of this kingdom of Lambri So
treuve l'en un autre qui a nom Fansur; et sont ydolastres;
finds one an other which has name Fansur and they-are idolaters
et s'appellent pour le grant Kaan. Et croist en ce royaume de
and themselves-call for the great Khan And grows in this kingdom of
Fansur le meilleur canfre du monde, qui est appellé canfre
Fansur the best camphor of-the world which is called camphor
Fansury. Et est si fin que il se vent à pois d'or fin. Ilz
Fansuri And it-is so fine that it itself sells at weight of-gold fine They
n'ont point de froment; mais ris que eulx menguent avec lait
not-have whit of wheat but rice which they eat with milk
et avec char. Et si ont du vin des arbres que je vous ay
and with meat And so they-have of-the wine of-the trees which I to-you have
dit. Et si vous conteray une autre merveille moult grant. Car
said And so to-you I-will-tell an other marvel very great For
ilz ont maniere d'arbres qui font farines, qui est moult bonne
they have manner of-trees which make flours which is very good
à mengier. Ces arbres sont moult grans et moult gros; et si
to eat These trees are very great and very thick and so
ont l'escorce moult soutil; et dedans si sont moult plains de
have the-bark very thin and within so they-are very full of
farines. Et vous di encore que ledit messire Marc Pol, qui
flours And to-you I-tell further that the-said my-lord Mark Pol who
tout ce vit, conta comment pluseurs fois ilz orent de celle
all this saw told how several times they had of that
farine, et fu pestrie et fu, le pain, moult bon à mengier.
flour and it-was kneaded and was the bread very good to eat

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face; si que nous vous
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make so that we to-you
avons conté de ces .viij. royaumes les .vi. lesquelz sont de ceste
have told of these eight kingdoms the six which are of this
partie de l'isle. Des autres deux royaumes de l'autre partie de
part of the-isle Of-the other two kingdoms of the-other part of
l'isle ne vous conteray je riens, pour ce que ledit messire
the-isle not to-you will-tell I anything for this that the-said my-lord
Marc Pol n'y fu point. Et pour ce lairons atant à conter
Mark Pol not-there was at-all And for this we-will-leave at-that to tell
de ceste isle meneur de Javva, que bien vous en avons conté
of this isle lesser of Java for well to-you thereof we-have told
la greigneur partie. Si vous conteray des deux isles petites
the greater part So to-you I-will-tell of-the two isles little
qui est, l'une, appellée Gavenispola, et l'autre Necouran.
which is the-one called Gauenispola and the-other Necuveran

On Necuveran and Gauenispola people go naked among groves of sandal and cloves. On Angamanain the men have heads like mastiffs and eat anyone not their own. Seilan is the finest island in the world and the only land where rubies grow, and its king would not sell the Khan his ruby, a palm long, for a city. On its high mountain the Saracens say Adam is buried; the idolaters say it is Sakyamuni, a king's son who fled his father's palace for the hills, and whose golden image was the first idol. The Khan's envoys brought back two teeth, hair, and his bowl.

166 Cy dit de l'isle de Gavenispola et de celle de Necouran.
Here tells of the-isle of Gauenispola and of that of Necuveran
Quant l'en se part de l'isle de Javva (la meneur)
When one himself departs from the-isle of Java the lesser
que je vous ay conté, et du royaume de Lambry, l'en
which I to-you have told and from-the kingdom of Lambri one
va par tremontainne entour cent cinquante milles, adonc
goes by north about hundred fifty miles then
treuve l'en deux isles, que l'une est appellée Necouran,
finds one two isles of-which the-one is called Necuveran
et l'autre Gavenispola. Ilz n'ont nul roy, ne nul seigneur;
and the-other Gauenispola They not-have any king nor any lord
mais vivent comme beste. Et si vous di qu'ilz vont tous
but live like beast And so to-you I-tell that-they go all
nuz, et hommes et femmes, que ilz ne se cueuvrent
naked both men and women so-that they not themselves cover
de nulle riens du monde. Et sont idles. Et si vous di
with any thing of-the world And they-are idolaters And so to-you I-tell
que leurs boscages tous sont d'arbres nobles et de grant
that their groves all are of-trees noble and of great

vaillance. Ilz sont de cendel et de nois d'Inde; et de
worth They are of sandal and of nuts of-India and of
garofles et de bresil; et de pluseurs autres bonnes espices.
cloves and of brazil and of several other good spices

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Pour ce
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make For this
nous en partirons, et vous diray d'une isle qui a nom
we thence will-depart and to-you I-will-tell of-an isle which has name
Angamanain.
Angamanain

Cy dit de l'isle de Angamanain. 167
Here tells of the-isle of Angamanain

Angamanain est une isle moult grant. Ilz n'ont nulz roy,
Angamanain is an isle very great They not-have any king
et sont ydolastres, et sont comme bestes sauvages. Et si vous
and are idolaters and are like beasts wild And so to-you
di que tuit li homme de ceste isle de Angamanain ont chief
I-tell that all the men of this isle of Angamanain have head
comme chiens; et dens, et yeux aussi; car tuit semblent, de
like dogs and teeth and eyes also for all seem in
visaiges, chiens mastins grans. Ilz ont espiceries assez; et sont
faces dogs mastiffs great They have spiceries plenty and are
moult cruelz gens, car ilz menguent tous ceulx qu'ils pevent
very cruel people for they eat all those whom-they can
prendre, puis qu'ilz ne sont de leurs gens. Ilz vivent de riz
take provided that-they not are of their people They live from rice
et de char et de lait; et si ont fruit devisés des notres.
and from meat and from milk and so they-have fruit different from-the ours

Or vous ay conté de ceste generation de gens, pour ce
Now to-you I-have told of this generation of people for this
que bien fait à conter en notre livre. Si vous diray avant
that well it-is-fit to tell in our book So to-you I-will-tell forward
d'une isle qui a nom Seilan, si comme vous pourrez oyr.
of-an isle which has name Seilan so as you will-be-able hear

168 Cy dit de l'isle de Ceylan.
Here tells of the-isle of Ceylon

Quant l'en se part de l'isle de Angamanain, et on
When one himself departs from the-isle of Angamanain and one
va entour mille milles par ponent, aucune chose n'y
goes about thousand miles by west any thing not-there
a; moins vers garbin adonc treuve l'en l'isle de Seilan, qui
is less toward southwest then finds one the-isle of Seilan which
est tout vraiement la meilleur isle que soit ou monde,
is all truly the best isle which be in-the world
de sa grandesce. Et sachiez que elle dure bien deux mille
for its greatness And know that it lasts fully two thousand
quatre cens milles. Mais anciennement estoit greigneur, car
four hundred miles But anciently it-was greater for
elle duroit bien environ trois milles (milles), selon ce
it lasted fully about three thousand miles according-to that
que les bons mariniers dient de celle mer. Mais le vent de
which the good mariners say of that sea But the wind of
tramontainne y vente si fort qu'il a fait aler une grant
north there blows so strongly that-it has made go a great
partie de celle soubs aigue. Et celle est l'achoison pourquoy
part of it under water And this is the-occasion why
elle n'est si grant comme elle fu jadis. Mais sachiez que de
it not-is so great as it was formerly But know that from
là où le vent à tramontainne vient, est l'isle moult basse et
there where the wind of north comes is the-isle very low and

toute plaine. Et quant l'en vient de haulte mer atout aucune
all plain And when one comes from high sea with-all some
nef, l'en ne puet veoir la terre devant ce que on est dessus.
ship one not can see the land before this that one is upon-it

Or vous conterons des fais de ceste isle. Ilz ont roy que
Now to-you we-will-tell of-the deeds of this isle They have king whom
ilz appellent Sendemain; et n'en font treuage à nul.
they call Sendemain and not-thereof they-make tribute to anyone
Ilz sont ydolastres et vont tous nuz fors qu'ilz cueuvrent
They are idolaters and go all naked except that-they cover
leur nature. Ilz n'ont nulz blés, mais ris et suseman, de
their nature They not-have any grains but rice and sesame from
quoy ilz font huylles. Ilz vivent de char et de lait, et
which they make oils They live from meat and from milk and
ont vin de ces arbres que je vous ay dit autrefois. Et
have wine from these trees which I to-you have said another-time And
si ont de bresil moult le meilleur du monde.
so they-have of brazil very the best of-the world

Or vous lairay à conter de ces choses, et vous diray la
Now you I-will-leave to tell of these things and to-you I-will-tell the
plus precieuse chose qui soit ou monde. Car sachiez que en
most precious thing which be in-the world For know that in
ceste isle treuve l'en les rubis, et en nulle autre contrée du
this isle finds one the rubies and in any other country of-the
monde ne croissent, fors que en ceste isle. Et si y treuve
world not they-grow except that in this isle And so there finds
l'en les saphirs aussi et les scopaces, et les amastites et de
one the sapphires also and the topazes and the amethysts and of
maintes autres pierres precieuses. Et si a, le roy de ceste isle,
many other stones precious And so has the king of this isle
un rubis le plus bel et le plus gros qui soit ou monde; et
a ruby the most fine and the most big which be in-the world and

vous diray comment il est fait. Il est long bien une grant
to-you I-will-tell how it is made It is long fully a great
paume, et bien gros tant comme est gros le bras d'un
palm and fully thick as-much as is thick the arm of-a
homme. Il est la plus resplendissans chose du monde à veoir;
man It is the most resplendent thing of-the world to see
et n'a nulle tache. Il est vermeil comme feu. Il est de si
and not-has any spot It is vermilion as fire It is of so
grant value que à paines le pourroit on paier de monnoie.
great value that with pains it could one pay with money
Et sachiez que le grant Kaan y envoya ses messages et
And know that the great Khan there sent his envoys and
lui manda que, par courtoisie, il lui vendist ce rubis et
to-him sent-word that by courtesy he to-him should-sell this ruby and
qu'il l'en prioit moult; si qu'il lui feroit donner pour
that-he him-thereof begged much so that-he to-him would-have given for
celluy rubis la value d'une cité ou tant comme il vouldroit.
that ruby the value of-a city or as-much as he would-wish

Le roy lui respondi que pour nulle chose du monde
The king to-him answered that for any thing of-the world
il ne le vendroit, pour ce qu'il fu à ses ancestres.
he not it would-sell for this that-it was to his ancestors

Ilz ne sont pas gens d'armes, ains sont chetif et vil.
They not are at-all people of-arms but are wretched and base
Mais quant ilz ont besoings de gens d'armes, si les ont
But when they have needs of people of-arms so them they-have
d'une autre contrée qui sont Sarrasins.
from-an other country who are Saracens

Encores sachiez qu'il y a en ceste isle de Seilan une
Further know that-it there is in this isle of Seilan a
moult haulte montaigne; et est droite, et si roiste que nulz
very high mountain and is straight and so steep that anyone

ne puet monter dessus, fors que en ceste maniere que ilz
not can climb above except that in this manner that they
ont fait prendre pluseurs chaines de fer grans et grosses,
have had taken several chains of iron great and thick
et si ordonnées que par ces chaines montent les hommes
and so ordered that by these chains climb the men
là sus. Et vous di que ilz dient que sur ceste montaigne
up there And to-you I-tell that they say that upon this mountain
est le monument d'Adam notre premier pere; et ce dient,
is the monument of-Adam our first father and this say
les Sarrasins. Et les ydolastres dient que c'est le monument
the Saracens And the idolaters say that it-is the monument
du premier ydolastre du monde, qui ot nom Sagamoni
of-the first idolater of-the world who had name Sakyamuni
borcam, et tiennent que il feust le meilleur homme du
Burkhan and hold that he was the best man of-the
monde, et que il fu saint selon leur usage. Et fu filz,
world and that he was saint according-to their usage And he-was son
selon leur dit, d'un leur roy grant et riche. Et fu de
according-to their saying of-a their king great and rich And he-was of
si bonne vie que il ne voult oncques entendre aus choses
so good life that he not wished ever to-attend to-the things
mondaines, ne ne voult estre rois. Et quant son pere vit
worldly nor not wished to-be king And when his father saw
qu'il ne voult estre rois, ne qu'il ne vouloit à nulle chose
that-he not wished to-be king nor that-he not wished to any thing
entendre, si en ot moult grant ire, et l'assaya avant
attend so thereof he-had very great anger and him-tried first
de grans promesses. Mais il n'en vouloit riens; si que
with great promises But he not-thereof wished anything so that
le pere en avoit moult grant douleur; et d'autre part
the father thereof had very great sorrow and on-other part

aussi pour ce que il n'avoit nulz autres filz que lui, à qui
also for this that he not-had any other son than him to whom
il peust laissier son royaume apres sa mort. Si pensa le
he might leave his kingdom after his death So thought the
roy, et fist faire un grant palais, et leans fist mettre son
king and had made a great palace and in-there had put his
filz, et le faisoit servir à moult de pucelles les plus belles
son and him had served by many of maidens the most beautiful
que il povoit oncques trouver. Et leur commanda que elles
that he could ever find And them he-commanded that they
jouassent avecques lui toute jour et toute nuit, et que elles
should-play with him all day and all night and that they
chantassent et dansassent devant lui, à ce que son cuer se
should-sing and dance before him to this that his heart itself
peust traire aux choses mondainnes. Mais tout ce n'y
might draw to-the things worldly But all this not-there
valoit riens; car il disoit qu'il vouloit aler cerchier celluy
availed anything for he said that-he wished to-go seek him
qui ne mourra jamais; et que il veoit bien que chascun
who not will-die ever-more and that he saw well that each
qui est en ce monde convenoit mourir ou jeune ou viel.
who is in this world it-behooved die either young or old
Si ne fist autre chose une nuit, fors que priveement se
So not he-did other thing one night except that privily himself
party du palais, et s'en ala aux grans montaignes
he-departed from-the palace and himself-thence went to-the great mountains
et moult desvoiables. Et illec demoura moult honnestement,
and very out-of-the-way And there he-dwelt very honestly
et moult menoit aspre vie; et fist moult grans abstinences,
and much led harsh life and made very great abstinences
ainsi comme s'il eust esté crestien. Car s'il l'eust esté, il
thus as if-he had been Christian For if-he it-had been he

feust un grant saint avec notre Seigneur Jhesucrist, à la
would-be a great saint with our Lord Jesus-Christ by the
bonne vie et honneste qu'il mena. Et quant il fu mort,
good life and honest which-he led And when he was dead
si fu trouvé et apporté à son pere. Et quant le pere
so he-was found and brought to his father And when the father
vit mort celluy qu'il amoit mieulx que soy meismes, à
saw dead him whom-he loved better than himself same at
pou qu'il ne devenoit fol de douleur; et fist faire à sa
little that-he — became mad with grief and had made in his
semblance un ymage d'or et de pierres precieuses; et la
likeness an image of-gold and of stones precious and it
faisoit aourer par tous ceulx du pays. Et disoient tous qu'il
he-had worshiped by all those of-the country And they-said all that-he
estoit dieux. Et encore le dient ilz. Et dient encore qu'il
was god And still it say they And they-say further that-he
moru .iiij.xx. et .iiij. (quatre-vingt-quatre) fois. La premiere
died four-score and four four-score-four times The first
il morut homme, et puis resuscita; et puis devint beuf.
he died man and then rose-again and then became ox
Et beuf morut et devint cheval. Et ainsi dient qu'il moru
And ox he-died and became horse And thus they-say that-he died
.iiij.xx. et .iiij. (quatre-vingt et quatre) fois; et à chascune
four-score and four four-score and four times and at each
d'une maniere de beste. Et à la derreniere fois mourut et
of-a manner of beast And at the last time he-died and
devint dieux, selon ce qu'ilz dient. Et le tiennent pour
became god according-to that which-they say And him they-hold for
le plus grant dieu que ilz aient. Et si comme ilz dient fu
the most great god that they have And so as they say was
faite pour cestuy la premiere ydole que les ydolastres orent
made for this-one the first idol that the idolaters had

oncques; si que depuis sont descendues de cestuy toutes
ever so that since are descended from this-one all
les autres ydoles. Et ce fu en l'isle de Seilan en Ynde.
the other idols And this was in the-isle of Seilan in India
Et encore vous di que Sarrazins y viennent de moult
And further to-you I-tell that Saracens there come from very
loings en pelerinage, et dient que il fu Adam. Et les
far in pilgrimage and say that he was Adam And the
ydolastres y viennent aussi de moult loings en pelerinage
idolaters there come also from very far in pilgrimage
à grant devocion, aussi comme vont les crestiens à Saint
with great devotion also as go the Christians to Saint
Jacque en Galice. Et si dient que il fu le filz le roy, si
James in Galicia And so they-say that he was the son (of-)the king so
comme je vous ay dit et conté. Et encore sur la montaigne
as I to-you have said and told And further on the mountain
sont les cheveulx et les dens et l'escuelle de celluy qui y
are the hairs and the teeth and the-bowl of him who there
fu, que il appellent Sergamon saint. Et qui que il fu,
was whom they call Sakyamuni saint And whoever that he was
dieux le scet; car, selon la sainte escripture de notre Eglise,
God it knows for according-to the holy scripture of our Church
le monument d'Adam n'est pas en celle partie du monde.
the monument of-Adam not-is at-all in that part of-the world
Or advint que le grant Kaan oy comment sus celle
Now it-happened that the great Khan heard how upon that
montaigne estoit le monument d'Adam notre premier pere;
mountain was the monument of-Adam our first father
et que encore y avoit de ses cheveux et de ses dens,
and that still there were of his hairs and of his teeth
et l'escuelle ou il mengoit. Si pensa que il les auroit
and the-bowl where he ate So he-thought that he them would-have

en toutes manieres. Si envoya une grant messagiere; et ce
in all manners So he-sent a great embassy and this
fu ou temps .m.cc.lx. et .xxiiij. ans (1284) de
was at-the time a-thousand-two-hundred-sixty and twenty-four years 1284 of
Crist. Les messages allerent tant par mer et par terre que ilz
Christ The envoys went so-far by sea and by land that they
vindrent à l'isle de Seilan et s'en allerent au roy, et
came to the-isle of Seilan and themselves-thence went to-the king and
tant pourchacierent que ils orent deux des dens messelieres,
so-much strove that they had two of-the teeth molars
qui moult sont grans et grosses. Et si orent aussi de ses
which very are great and big And so they-had also of his
cheveux; et si orent aussi l'escuelle où il mengoit. Elle
hairs and so they-had also the-bowl where he ate It
est d'un pourfil vert moult beau. Et quant les messages du
is of-a porphyry green very fine And when the envoys of-the
grant Kaan orent ce pourquoi il estoient venuz, si orent
great Khan had that for-which they were come so they-had
grant joie et retournerent à leur seigneur. Et quant il
great joy and returned to their lord And when they
furent pres de la grant cité de Cambaluc, là où le grant
were near of the great city of Khanbaliq there where the great
Kaan estoit, si li firent savoir comment il aportoient ce
Khan was so to-him they-made know how they brought that
pourquoi il les avoit envoyés. Quant le grant Kaan le sot, si
for-which he them had sent When the great Khan it knew so
en fu moult liez et commanda que l'en alast à l'encontre
thereof was very glad and commanded that one should-go to the-meeting
à ces reliques; car il li estoit fait entendant qu'il estoit
of these relics for it to-him was made believing that-it was
d'Adam. Si y alerent moult de genz à l'encontre et à
of-Adam So there went many of people to the-meeting and with

grant devotion. Et les reçut, le grant Kaan, à grant feste
great devotion And them received the great Khan with great feast
et à grant honneur. Et si disoient que celle escuelle avoit
and with great honor And so they-said that that bowl had
tel vertu que, qui metroit viande dedans, pour un homme,
such virtue that who would-put food within for a man
il en y auroit assez pour cinq. Et sachiez que le grant
it thereof there would-be plenty for five And know that the great
Kaan le fist prouver, et trouva l'en que c'estoit verité.
Khan it had proved and found one that it-was truth

Or avez entendu comment le grant Kaan ot ces
Now you-have heard how the great Khan had these
reliques; mais moult li couterent grant avoir. Et si avez
relics but much to-him they-cost great wealth And so you-have
bien entendu toute l'histoire comment vindrent ces reliques,
well heard all the-story how came these relics
si comme il content par le filz du roy.
so as they tell by the son of-the king

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face, et pour ce
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make and for this
nous partirons et irons avant, et dirons de Maabar.
we will-depart and will-go forward and will-tell of Maabar

XXVII · MAABAR, THE GREATER INDIA

Sixty miles west of Seilan lies Maabar, the greater India, ruled by five royal brothers. Its pearl divers work a gulf from April to mid-May under enchanters who charm the great fish. The king goes naked but for a collar of jewels and a cord of 104 pearls for his daily prayers, and buys every great pearl for himself. His faithful barons burn themselves on his pyre, and his heirs never touch his treasure. Horses die there, so the merchants of Kish and Hormuz grow rich selling them. The people worship the ox, sit on the ground, and read omens in sneezes and birds.

Cy devise de la grant province de Maabar, que l'en appelle 169
Here describes of the great province of Maabar which one calls
l'Ynde greigneur; et si est la terre ferme.
the-India greater and so it-is the land firm

Quant l'en se part de l'isle de Seilan, et l'en va par
When one himself departs from the-isle of Seilan and one goes by
ponent, entour .lx. (soixante) milles, adonc treuve l'en la
west about sixty sixty miles then finds one the
grant province de Maabar qui est appellée l'Inde greigneur;
great province of Maabar which is called the-India greater
et c'est la meilleur Inde qui soit; et si est de la terre
and it-is the best India which be and so it-is of the land
ferme. Et sachiez que en ceste province a .v. roys qui
firm And know that in this province there-are five kings who
sont freres charnels. Et si vous dirai de chascun par soy.
are brothers carnal And so to-you I-will-tell of each by himself
Elle est la plus belle et la plus noble province du monde.
It is the most fine and the most noble province of-the world

Au chief de la province regne un de ces cinq roys
At-the head of the province reigns one of these five kings
freres, qui est roy couronné, et a nom Sonder bandi
brothers who is king crowned and has name Sonder Bandi

davar. Et en son regne treuve l'en les perles moult grosses
Davar And in his realm finds one the pearls very big
et moult belles; et vous dirai comment on les treuve.
and very fine and to-you I-will-tell how one them finds
Or sachiez que il a en ceste mer un golf entre l'isle de
Now know that it there-is in this sea a gulf between the-isle of
Seilan et la terre ferme. Et entour ce golf n'y a d'aigues,
Seilan and the land firm And around this gulf not-there is of-waters
que de dix à douze pas; et tel lieu y a qu'il n'en
but from ten to twelve paces and such place there is that-it not-thereof
a pas deux pas. Et ceus qui vont prendre les perles, si
there-is at-all two paces And those who go take the pearls so
ont leurs nefs et vont en ce golf, du mois d'avril jusques
have their ships and go into this gulf from-the month of-April until
à la mi may. Et vont en un lieu que l'en appelle Betelar.
to the mid May And they-go to a place which one calls Bettelar
Et vont en mer .lx. (soixante) milles en ce golf. Et illec
And they-go into sea sixty sixty miles into this gulf And there
sont, et jettent leur ancres; et entrent de leurs grans nefs
they-are and cast their anchors and enter from their great ships
en leurs petites barges. Mais sachiez que il seront pluseurs
into their little barges But know that they will-be several
marcheans qui feront compaignie ensemble. Et leur convient
merchants who will-make company together And to-them behooves
trouver pluseurs hommes à gages; si que il les paient
find several men at wages so that they them pay
d'avril jusques à la mi may. Et si donnent avant au
from-April until to the mid May And so they-give first to-the
roy, pour son droit, la disieme partie de tout ce qu'il
king for his right the tenth part of all that which-they
prennent. Et si leur convient aussi donner aus hommes
take And so to-them behooves also give to-the men

qui enchantent les grans poissons que il ne facent mal
who enchant the great fishes so-that they not do harm
aus hommes qui vont soubs l'eaue pour trouver les perles,
to-the men who go under the-water for to-find the pearls
le .xxe. (20e) de tout ce que il prennent. Et nomment
the twentieth 20th of all that which they take And they-name
ces hommes qui enchantent ces poissons: Abrivaman; et leur
these men who enchant these fishes Abraiaman and their
enchantement dure celui jour seulement. Et sachiez aussi que
enchantment lasts that day only And know also that
ces Abrivamans sevent enchanter les bestes et les oiseaux, et
these Abraiamans know enchant the beasts and the birds and
toutes choses qui ont ames. Et quant les hommes sont es
all things which have souls And when the men are in-the
petites barges, si se getent en yaue et vont soubs yaue
little barges so themselves they-throw into water and go under water
jusques au fons, où il y a eaue de quatre pas jusques
as-far-as to-the bottom where it there is water from four paces as-far-as
à douze; et tant demeurent là aval comme ilz pevent. Et
to twelve and so-long they-remain there down as they can And
treuvent les coquilles là où sont les perles. Et sont ces
they-find the shells there where are the pearls And are these
coquilles si faites comme les oistres ou les crapes de la mer.
shells so made as the oysters or the crabs of the sea
En ces coquilles treuve l'en perles grosses et menues et
In these shells finds one pearls big and small and
de toutes façons, car ces perles sont fichées en la char de
of all fashions for these pearls are fixed in the flesh of
ces coquilles. Et en ceste maniere pesche l'en les perles en
these shells And in this manner fishes one the pearls in
grant quantité; car de ci issent les perles qui s'espendent
great quantity for from here issue the pearls which themselves-spread

par mi le monde. Et sachiez que le roy de cest regne a
through amid the world And know that the king of this realm has
moult grant droit de ces perles et moult grant tresor. Et
very great due from these pearls and very great treasure And
sachiez que sitost comme passe demy may, il ne treuvent
know that as-soon as passes mid May they not find
plus de ces coquilles là où l'en treuve ces perles. Bien est
more of these shells there where one finds these pearls Well is
voir que loins de ci, bien à trois cens milles, les treuve
true that far from here fully at three hundred miles them finds
l'en aussi; mais c'est de septembre jusques à mi octembre.
one also but it-is from September until to mid October

Sachiez que en toute ceste province de Maabar n'a
Know that in all this province of Maabar not-there-is
maistre tailleur ne cousturier de robes pour taillier, ne pour
master cutter nor tailor of robes for to-cut nor for
coustre robes; pour ce qu'il vont toujours touz nuz. Mais il
to-sew robes for this that-they go always all naked But they
cueuvrent leur nature d'un pou de drap; et aussi les hommes
cover their nature with-a little of cloth and also the men
comme les femmes, et les poures comme les riches. Et ainsi
as the women and the poor as the rich And thus
va li roys, sauf que il porte tel chose comme je vous dirai.
goes the king save that he wears such thing as I to-you will-tell

Il a au col tout environ un fresiau qui est tout plain de
He has at-the neck all around a collar which is all full of
pierres precieuses qu'il porte à son col. Ce sont rubis, saphirs,
stones precious which-he wears at his neck These are rubies sapphires
esmeraudes et autres pierres; si que ce colier vaut un grant
emeralds and other stones so that this collar is-worth a great
tresor. Et si a aussi, devant le piz, du col jusques aval,
treasure And so he-has also before the breast from-the neck as-far-as down

un fil soubtil de soie qui a .c. et .iiij. (cent quatre)
a thread fine of silk which has a-hundred and four hundred four
grosses perles. Et si a aussi plusieurs autres rubis. Pourquoi,
big pearls And so he-has also several other rubies Wherefore
si comme il dient, il porte celui cordon atout cent et quatre
so as they say he wears that cord with-all hundred and four
perles grosses et rubis: si est pour ce que il li convient
pearls big and rubies so it-is for this that it to-him behooves
dire chascun jour cent et quatre oroisons de ses ydoles. Car
say each day hundred and four orisons of his idols For
ainsi est leur loy et leur maniere; et ainsi le firent tuit les
thus is their law and their manner and thus it did all the
roys ses ancestres. Et ainsi li laisserent que il le deust faire.
kings his ancestors And thus to-him they-left that he it should do

Et encore porte, ledit roy, par ses bras, trois braceus d'or
And further wears the-said king on his arms three bracelets of-gold
tous plains de perles d'or de grant vallue; et aussi en porte
all full of pearls of-gold of great value and also thereof he-wears
aus jambes, et encore aus doiz des piez. Si que je vous di
on-the legs and further on-the toes of-the feet So that I to-you tell
que ce que porte ce roy, sur lui: d'or et de pierres, et de
that that which wears this king upon him of-gold and of stones and of
perles vault plus d'une cité. Et ce n'est pas merveille, car il
pearls is-worth more than-a city And this not-is at-all marvel for he
en a assez. Et d'autre part l'en les treuve en son regne. Et
thereof has plenty And on-other part one them finds in his realm And
si sachiez que nulz ne puet traire hors de son royaume nulle
so know that anyone not can take out of his kingdom any
perle qui poise outre demi pois, se l'en ne les treuve et trait
pearl which weighs beyond half weight if one not them finds and takes
celeement. Et ce fait il pour ce qu'il les veult toutes pour
secretly And this does he for this that-he them wishes all for

lui; si que il en a tant que c'est merveilleuse chose à
himself so that he thereof has so-many that it-is marvelous thing to
croire. Et encore que chascun an pluseurs fois il fait crier son
believe And further that each year several times he has cried his
ban par tout son royaume, que qui aura aucune perle
proclamation through all his kingdom that who will-have some pearl
ou pierre qui soit de grant value, qu'il l'apporte, et il lui
or stone which be of great value that-he it-bring and he to-him
fera donner deux tans que il ne li cousta; si que chascun
will-have given two times what it — to-him cost so that each
li aporte volentiers, et il amasse tout, et paie chascun.
to-him brings willingly and he amasses all and pays each

Encores sachiez que ce roy a bien cinq cens femmes;
Further know that this king has fully five hundred wives
car tantost comme il sait une belle damoiselle, il l'espouse.
for as-soon as he knows a fair damsel he her-weds
Et si fait une si male chose comme je vous dirai. Car
And so does a so evil thing as I to-you will-tell For
il vit à son frere une belle mollier; si li tolli par
he saw to his brother a fair wife so from-him he-took by
force, et la retint pour li. Et son frere n'en fist
force and her kept for himself And his brother not-thereof made
nul semblant; ains s'en passa outre comme sage.
any semblance but himself-thence passed over as wise

Ce roy a moult d'enfans. Et si a aussi pluseurs
This king has many of-children And so he-has also several
barons qui servent le roy, et chevauchent avec lui, et li
barons who serve the king and ride with him and to-him
sont entour; et ont grant seigneurie par le regne; et
are around and have great lordship through the realm and
s'appellent feels du seigneur. Et si sachiez que quant le
themselves-call faithful-ones of-the lord And so know that when the

roy muert, et l'en le met ou feu pour ardoir, si comme
king dies and one him puts in-the fire for to-burn so as
est leur usage, ses feels se getent el feu avec lui,
is their usage his faithful-ones themselves throw into-the fire with him
et li sont entour, et se laissent ardoir. Car il dient
and to-him are around and themselves let burn For they say
qu'il ont esté ses compaignons en ce siecle, si le doivent
that-they have been his companions in this world so him they-must
estre aussi en l'autre, et faire lui compaignie. Et quant le
be also in the-other and do him company And when the
roy est mort, nul de ses enfans n'ose touchier son tresor.
king is dead any of his children not-dares touch his treasure
Car il dient: «De puis que notre pere gaaingna ce tresor
For they say From since that our father gained this treasure
et amassa, nous y devons autretant aussi amasser.» Si
and amassed we there must as-much also amass So
que en ceste maniere y a moult grant tresor en ce regne.
that in this manner there is very great treasure in this realm

En cest regne ne naist nul cheval; si que la greigneur
In this realm not is-born any horse so that the greater
part de leur tresor se degaste en achater chevaus; et vous
part of their treasure itself spends in buying horses and to-you
dirai comment. Sachiez que les marcheans de Quis, et
I-will-tell how Know that the merchants of Kish and
des Hormes et Dufar ont chevaus assez, et autres pluseurs
of-the Hormuz and Dhofar have horses plenty and other several
provinces, et d'autres pars aussi; si que ilz les portent ou
provinces and from-other parts also so that they them carry into-the
regne de ce roy, et de ses autres quatre freres qui sont
realm of this king and of his other four brothers who are
roys, si comme je vous ai dit. Car un cheval leur est bien
kings so as I to-you have said For a horse to-them is well

vendu cinq cenz pois d'or, qui valent plus de cent mars
sold five hundred weights of-gold which are-worth more than hundred marks
d'argent, et leur en vendent moult grant quantité chascun
of-silver and to-them thereof they-sell very great quantity each
an. Et en veut bien, ce roy, chascun an, plus de deux
year And thereof wishes well this king each year more than two
mille; et ainsi en veulent ses autres quatre freres qui roys
thousand and thus thereof wish his other four brothers who kings
sont. Et la raison pourquoy il veulent tant de chevaus,
are And the reason why they wish so-many of horses
chascun an, si est pour ce que touz les chevaus que il
each year so is for this that all the horses which they
achatent muerent avant le chief de l'an; et c'est de male
buy die before the end of the-year and it-is from bad
garde, car il ne les sevent tenir ne garder. Et aussi n'ont
care for they not them know keep nor guard And also not-have
il nulz mareschaux. Et les marcheans qui leur mainent les
they any farriers And the merchants who to-them bring the
chevaus ne leur en mainent, ne n'y laissent aler nulz
horses not to-them thereof bring nor not-there let go any
mareschaux, pour ce que il ne perdent la vente de leurs
farriers for this that they not lose the sale of their
chevaus; dequoi il gaaignent moult grant avoir chascun
horses from-which they gain very great wealth each
an. Et leur portent ces chevaus par mer en leurs nefs.
year And to-them they-carry these horses by sea in their ships

Il ont en ce royaume un tel usaige comme je vous dirai.
They have in this kingdom a such usage as I to-you will-tell
Car quant aucun homme doit morir pour aucun mal qu'il
For when some man must die for some evil which-he
aura fait; si dit que il meismes s'occirra pour l'onneur de
will-have done so he-says that he himself will-kill-himself for the-honor of

cel ydole; et la seigneurie le veust assez bien. Si le prennent,
that idol and the lordship it wishes quite well So him they-take
si parent et si ami, et le mettent sus une charrete, et lui
his kin and his friends and him put upon a cart and to-him
donnent douze coustiaus, et le portent par toute la cité; et
give twelve knives and him carry through all the city and
vont criant et disant: «Ce vaillant homme ci se veust occire
go crying and saying This valiant man here himself wishes to-kill
pour l'amour de cel ydole.» Et quant il sont venuz au lieu
for the-love of that idol And when they are come to-the place
où la justice se doit faire, si prent un coustel et s'en
where the justice itself must do so he-takes a knife and himself-therewith
donne par mi le bras, et crie: «Je m'occi pour l'amour
strikes through middle the arm and cries I myself-kill for the-love
de tel dieu!» Et puis prent l'autre coustel et s'en
of such god And then he-takes the-other knife and himself-therewith
donne par mi l'autre bras; et puis un autre coustel
strikes through middle the-other arm and then an other knife
et s'en donne par mi le ventre; et ainsi se
and himself-therewith strikes through middle the belly and thus himself
donne tant qu'il se tue. Et quant il est mort, si parent
strikes so-much that-he himself kills And when he is dead his kin
prennent le corps et l'ardent à grant joie et à grant feste.
take the body and it-burn with great joy and with great feast
Et encore y a pluseurs femmes qui, quant leur mari est
And further there are several women who when their husband is
mort et l'en le met ou feu pour ardoir, si s'ardent avec
dead and one him puts in-the fire for to-burn so themselves-burn with
lui. Et les femmes qui ce font, si sont moult loées de touz.
him And the women who this do so are much praised by all

Il sont idolatres et pluseurs d'eus aourent le buef; car
They are idolaters and several of-them worship the ox for
il dient que le buef est moult bonne chose; et ne le
they say that the ox is very good thing and not it
mengeroient pour riens du monde, ne ne l'occirroient en
would-eat for anything of-the world nor not it-would-kill in
nulle maniere. Mais il y a aucune maniere de genz qui sont
any manner But it there is some manner of people who are
appellez Govy, qui menguent bien la char du buef; mais il
called Govi who eat well the meat of-the ox but they
ne l'osent occire. Mais quant aucun buef muert de sa mort ou
not it-dare kill But when some ox dies of its death or
d'autre, si le menguent. Sachiez que la gent du pays oignent
of-other so it they-eat Know that the people of-the country anoint
touz leurs hostelz de suif de buef. Et encore sachiez que le
all their houses with tallow of ox And further know that the
roy, et tuit si baron, et tretuit grant et petit ne se sient
king and all his barons and all great and small not themselves sit
sus autre chose que sus la terre. Et dient que il le font
upon other thing than upon the earth And they-say that they it do
pour ce, que seoir sus la terre est moult honnorable chose,
for this that sitting upon the earth is very honorable thing
pour ce que nous sommes tuit de terre, et à la terre devons
for this that we are all of earth and to the earth must
retourner. Si que pour ce, nulz ne pourroit trop honnourer
return So that for this anyone not could too-much honor
la terre; ne nul ne la doit desprisier. Et sachiez que ceste
the earth nor anyone not it must despise And know that this
generation de Gavis ont ceste chose en euls que pour nulle
generation of Govi have this thing in them that for any
chose du monde nulz d'eus ne porroit entrer ou lieu où
thing of-the world any of-them not could enter into-the place where

messire saint Thomas soit; c'est à dire: le corps, lequel est
my-lord saint Thomas be that-is to say the body which is
en ceste province de Maabar en une ville. Car se vingt ou
in this province of Maabar in a town For if twenty or
trente hommes preissent un de ces Gavis si ne le pourroient
thirty men took one of these Govi so not him could
il tenir au lieu où est le corps du beneoit apostre
they hold in-the place where is the body of-the blessed apostle
Jhesu Crist. Et ce est par la vertu du saint, pour ce que
(of-)Jesus Christ And this is by the virtue of-the saint for this that
leur lignage l'occistrent; si comme vous pourrez oir ci avant.
their lineage him-killed so as you will-be-able hear here forward

Sachiez que il ne croist nulz blez en ceste province, autre
Know that it not grows any grains in this province other
que ris. Encore sachiez une grant merveille, que pour riens
than rice Further know a great marvel that for anything
du monde ne puet naistre nul cheval en ceste province;
of-the world not can be-born any horse in this province
car bien l'ont prouvé par pluseurs fois. Et quant il
for well it-they-have proved by several times And when they
font saillir aucune jument d'aucun bon destrier, si ne porte
make cover some mare by-some good charger so not she-bears
autre chose que petiz roncines; et ont les piez touz
other thing than little nags and they-have the feet all
tors; et ne les puet l'en chevauchier.
twisted and not them can one ride

Les gens de cest pais vont touz en bataille sauf ce,
The people of this country go all into battle save this
que il portent ne lances, ne escus; et sont vilz hommes
that they carry nor lances nor shields and are base men
d'armes. Il n'occient nulle beste, ne nul oisel, ne nulle
of-arms They not-kill any beast nor any bird nor any

chose qui ait ame; mais les bestes dont il menguent les
thing which have soul but the beasts of-which they eat the
chars, il les font tuer aus Sarrazins, et aus autres qui ne
meats they them make kill by-the Saracens and by-the others who not
sont de leur loy. Il ont tel usage que chascun, soit masle
are of their law They have such usage that each be-it male
ou femelle, se lave tout le corps, chascun jour, deux fois;
or female himself washes all the body each day two times
et ceus qui ne se lavent sont tenus comme patarins. Il
and those who not themselves wash are held as heretics They
font trop grant justice de ceus qui font aucun mal; et si
make very great justice of those who do some evil and so
se gardent moult de boire vin; car ceus qui boivent vin
themselves guard much from drinking wine for those who drink wine
et vont par mer ne sont receus en nulle garantie. Et dient
and go by sea not are received in any surety And they-say
que ceus qui par mer vont sont ainsi comme desesperez.
that those who by sea go are thus as desperate
Il ne tiennent à nul pechie luxure. Et sachiez que
They not hold for any sin lust And know that
si chaut ont aucune fois que c'est merveille. Et n'ont
so hot they-have some time that it-is marvel And not-they-have
pluie fors que trois mois de l'an; c'est en juing, juliet
rain except that three months of the-year this-is in June July
et aoust. Et se ne fust la pluie qui chiet ces trois mois,
and August And if not were the rain which falls these three months
qui rafreschit la terre et le tems, il y auroit si grant
which refreshes the earth and the weather it there would-be so great
sescheresse que nulz n'y pourroit durer. Il ont moult
drought that anyone not-there could endure They have many
de sages d'un art que l'en appelle phisonomie: c'est de
of wise-men of-an art which one calls physiognomy this-is of

congnoistre les personnes, de quelle maniere et de quelle
knowing the persons of what manner and of what
qualité elles sont. Car de maintenant il li dient sa
quality they are For from at-once they to-him tell his
maniere; il sevent que ce signifie, quant l'en encontre aucun
manner they know what this signifies when one meets some
oisel, ou aucune beste; car il gardent à ce plus que touz les
bird or some beast for they heed to this more than all the
hommes du monde. Et se aucun aloit en un sien chemin
men of-the world And if someone went on a his road
et il ouït aucun estourni, si li semble bon; il va avant, ou
and he heard some sneeze so to-him it-seems good he goes forward or
il se serra une piece ou il retornera aucunes fois arrieres,
he himself will-sit a while or he will-return some times back
de son voiage, quant il li semble bon de ainsi faire.
from his voyage when it to-him seems good of thus doing
Et tantost qu'un enfant est nez, il escripvent le jour, et
And as-soon that-a child is born they write the day and
l'eure et le mois. Et ce font il pour ce que il font touz
the-hour and the month And this do they for this that they do all
leurs faiz par devinailles; car il sevent moult d'art magique
their deeds by divinations for they know much of-art magic
et de nigromance, et d'autres enchantemenz dyaboliques.
and of necromancy and of-other enchantments diabolical

En ce regne et par toute Inde ont leurs bestes et
In this realm and through all India they-have their beasts and
leurs oiseaus moult divers et differens des nostres. Et
their birds very diverse and different from-the ours And
de telz y a qui sont semblables aus nostres. Et aussi
of such there are which are like to-the ours And also
toutes autres choses ont devisées des nostres. Il ont
all other things they-have different from-the ours They have

en celluy pays oiseaux qui volent de nuit que l'en appelle
in that country birds which fly by night which one calls
chauves-souris, qui sont aussi grans comme un ostour. Et
bats which are as great as a goshawk And
leur ostours sont touz noirs comme corbeaux, et sont
their goshawks are all black as ravens and are
plus grant assez que les nostres, et bien volant et bien
more great much than the ours and well flying and well
oiselant. Encore sachiez que il donnent à mengier à leur
fowling Further know that they give to eat to their
chevaus ris avec char cuite et pluseurs autres choses cuites.
horses rice with meat cooked and several other things cooked
Et ce est pourquoy il se muerent touz en ce pays.
And this is why they themselves die all in this country

Il ont ydoles masles et fumelles auxquelz sont offert moult
They have idols male and female to-which are offered many
de damoiselles, en telle maniere que leurs peres et leurs meres
of damsels in such manner that their fathers and their mothers
les offrent à celle ydole à laquelle il ont plus grant devotion.
them offer to that idol to which they have more great devotion
Et quant leur nonnains de leur moustier veullent faire feste
And when their nuns of their minster wish to-make feast
à leur ydole, si envoient querre toutes les damoiselles offertes.
to their idol so they-send seek all the damsels offered
Et quant elles sont venues, si chantent et dancent devant leur
And when they are come so they-sing and dance before their
idole; et soulacent, et font grant feste, et portent viandes,
idol and make-merry and make great feast and carry foods
et donnent à mengier à leur ydole; car il lui mettent
and give to eat to their idol for they to-it put
à mengier devant elle; et la laissent une grant piece; puis
to eat before it and it leave a great while then

l'ostent et dient que l'ydole a pris la substance de la viande
it-remove and say that the-idol has taken the substance of the food
et puis menjuent. Et ainsi font les damoiselles par plusieurs
and then they-eat And thus do the damsels by several
fois, chascun an, jusques à tant que elles soient mariées.
times each year until to such-time that they be married

Or vous ai conté le fait de ce royaume, qui est
Now to-you I-have told the matter of this kingdom which is
en la province de Maabar; si que des autres royaumes qui
in the province of Maabar so that of-the other kingdoms which
y sont m'en passerai outre, car assez vous conterai
there are myself-thereof I-will-pass beyond for plenty to-you I-will-tell
de leurs manieres.
of their manners

Saint Thomas the apostle lies in a little town of Maabar, revered by Christians and by Saracens, who call him Avarian, a holy man. Earth from the place where he died cures fevers, and in 1288 the saint appeared to a baron who had filled the church's houses with rice and threatened him with death until he emptied them. The brothers who guard the church say a Govi idolater shooting at peacocks killed the saint at prayer in his hermitage. The people blacken their children with oil and paint their gods black and their devils white.

170 Cy dist où est le corps de saint Thomas l'apostre et de
Here tells where is the body of saint Thomas the-apostle and of
ses miracles.
his miracles

Le corps monseigneur saint Thomas si est en ceste
The body (of-)my-lord saint Thomas so is in this
province de Maabar en une petite ville où il n'a gueres
province of Maabar in a little town where it not-there-is much
de genz; et pou de marchans y vont, pour ce que c'est
of people and few of merchants there go for this that it-is
en un lieu moult desvoiable. Mais crestiens et sarrazins
in a place very out-of-the-way But Christians and Saracens
y viennent moult en pelerinage; car ces sarrazins y ont
there come much in pilgrimage for these Saracens there have
grant devotion; et dient que il fu leur sarrazin et grant
great devotion and say that he was their Saracen and great
prophete, et l'appellent Avarian qui vault à dire en françois
prophet and him-call Avarian which is-worth to say in French
saint homme. Les crestiens qui vont là en pelerinage si
holy man The Christians who go there in pilgrimage so
prennent de la terre là où le saint fu mort, et si en
take of the earth there where the saint was dead and so thereof

donnent à boire au malade qui a fievre quartainne ou
give to drink to-the sick-man who has fever quartan or
tiercienne. Et tout maintenant, par la vertu de Dieu et du
tertian And all at-once by the virtue of God and of-the
saint, le malade guerist. Et si avint un moult beau miracle
saint the sick recovers And so happened a very fine miracle
ou temps mille .cc. (deux cens) .iiij. .xx. et .viij.
in-the time thousand two-hundred two hundred four score and eight
(quatre-vingt et huit) ans de Crist, si comme je vous dirai.
four-score and eight years of Christ so as I to-you will-tell

Un baron de celle contrée, si avoit une grant quantité de
A baron of that country so had a great quantity of
ris, et en avoit empli toute les maisons de l'eglise, qui
rice and thereof had filled all the houses of the-church which
sont entour. Et les crestiens qui gardent l'eglise, si orent
are around And the Christians who guard the-church so had
moult grant douleur de ce que celui avoit empli les maisons,
very great sorrow of this that he had filled the houses
et que les pelerins n'avoient où herbergier. Et moult de fois
and that the pilgrims not-had where lodge And many of times
deprierent celui baron ydolatre que il les voulsist vuidier; et
they-begged that baron idolater that he them would-wish to-empty and
il n'en vouloit nient faire. Quant vint une nuit, si li
he not-thereof wished anything do When came a night so to-him
vint, le saint, atout un baston en sa main, et li mist sus
came the saint with-all a staff in his hand and to-him put upon
la gueule et li dist: «Ou tu feras vuidier mes maisons
the mouth and to-him said Either thou wilt-make empty my houses
pour herbergier mes pelerins, ou tu mourras de male mort.»
for to-lodge my pilgrims or thou wilt-die of evil death

Et quant ce vint au matin, cilz qui cuidoit bien morir
And when this came to-the morning he who thought well to-die
tout maintenant fist vuidier lesdittes maisons, de son ris;
all at-once had emptied the-said houses of his rice
et contoit à chascun ce qui lui estoit avenu du saint.
and told to each that which to-him was befallen from-the saint
Si que les crestiens en furent moult liez; et fu moult
So that the Christians thereof were very glad and it-was very
grant miracle et beau; et rendirent graces à Dieu, et
great miracle and fine and they-rendered thanks to God and
au benoit Saint Thomas l'apostre. Autres grans miracles
to-the blessed Saint Thomas the-apostle Other great miracles
y aviennent souvent: et de garir malades, et de guarir
there happen often both of curing sick and of curing
contrais, et d'autres pluseurs maus; et proprement crestiens.
cripples and of-other several ills and especially Christians
Or vous conterai comment les freres crestiens qui gardent
Now to-you I-will-tell how the brothers Christian who guard
l'eglise content comment il fu occis.
the-church tell how he was killed
Il content que le saint estoit en son hermitage au bois,
They tell that the saint was in his hermitage in-the wood
et faisoit ses oroisons; et moult de paons li estoient
and made his orisons and many of peacocks to-him were
entour; car plus en a en ce pays que nulle autre part;
around for more thereof there-are in this country than any other part
si que un des ydolatres de ce pays, qui sont du lignage
so that one of-the idolaters of this country who are of-the lineage
qui s'appellent gavi, si comme je vous ai dit, estoit alez
which themselves-call Govi so as I to-you have said was gone
atout un arc et saietes pour traire à ces paons qui li
with-all a bow and arrows for to-shoot at these peacocks which to-him

estoient entour. Si laissa aler une saiete et cuida donner aus
were around So he-let go an arrow and thought to-strike at-the
paons; et il feri le saint homme ou costé destre; si que
peacocks and he struck the holy man in-the side right so that
il morut de celui coup. Avant que il morust avoit il esté en
he died of that blow Before that he died had he been in
Nubie, où il converti moult de gent à la foi Jehsu Crist.
Nubia where he converted many of people to the faith (of-)Jesus Christ

Quant les enfans naissent, il sont tuit noir; mais pour
When the children are-born they are all black but for
ce qu'il les prisent plus tant comme il sont plus noirs,
this that-they them prize more as-much as they are more black
il les prennent quant il naissent, et les oignent chascune
they them take when they are-born and them anoint each
semaine d'uille de suscinan; si qu'il deviennent si noirs
week with-oil of sesame so that-they become so black
comme dyables. Encore font il leur diex noirs et leurs deables
as devils Further make they their gods black and their devils
blans; et font paindre leur ymages de leur sains tretouz noirs.
white and have painted their images of their saints all-together black

Quant il vont en ost, pour ce qu'il ont grant foy en
When they go on host for this that-they have great faith in
buef et le tiennent pour sainte chose, si prennent du poil
ox and it hold for holy thing so they-take of-the hair
des buefs sauvages, et le lient au col de leur cheval. Et
of-the oxen wild and it bind at-the neck of their horse And
se il est homme à pié, il met de ce poil à son escu, ou
if he is man on foot he puts of this hair on his shield or
à ses cheveus meismes; si que, par ceste raison, est ce poil
on his hairs same so that by this reason is this hair
chier. Et en y va assez; car nul qui va en ost n'est
dear And thereof there goes plenty for anyone who goes on host not-is

asseur, se il n'a de ce poil de buef. Car il croient que,
secure if he not-has of this hair of ox For they believe that
par celui poil, chascun, qui l'a, soit sauvé en la bataille.
by that hair each who it-has be saved in the battle

Or vous ai conté de ceste province de Maabar une
Now to-you I-have told of this province of Maabar a
grant partie; si nous partirons de ci atant, et vous
great part so we will-depart from here at-that and to-you
conterons du royaume de Mutfili, si avant, si comme vous
will-tell of-the kingdom of Mutfili so forward so as you
pourrez oïr et entendre.
will-be-able hear and understand

XXIX · MUTFILI AND ITS DIAMONDS

A thousand miles north of Maabar lies Mutfili, ruled for forty years by a widowed queen so just that all love her. Its diamonds are found where the rains have washed down the mountains, but the deepest valleys swarm with serpents. Men throw lean meat down, white eagles carry it up to eat, and the men chase the eagles away and take the diamonds stuck to it; others take them from the eagles' dung. Only the poorer diamonds reach Europe, since the best go to the Khan and other kings. Mutfili also weaves the finest buckram.

171 Cy devise du royaume de Mutfili.
Here describes of-the kingdom of Mutfili

Et quant l'en se part de Maabar et l'on va entour
And when one himself departs from Maabar and one goes about
mille milles par tramontaine, si se treuve l'en adonc ou
thousand miles by north so himself finds one then in-the
royaume de Mutfili. Et fu jadis à un roy; et de puis
kingdom of Mutfili And it-was formerly to a king and from since

qu'il mourut, bien quarante ans avoit; adonc la royne sa
that-he died fully forty years it-had then the queen his
femme l'ama tant que, onques puis ne se voult marier
wife him-loved so-much that ever since not herself wished to-marry
à nullui, pour l'amour de son mari. Et en tout ce terme
to anyone for the-love of her husband And in all this term
de quarante ans avoit tenu son royaume aussi bien ou
of forty years she-had held her kingdom as well or
mieux que onques le tint son baron; si que, pour ce qu'elle
better than ever it held her lord so that for this that-she
amoit droit et justice et pais, estoit elle amée de chascun.
loved right and justice and peace was she loved by each

Il sont ydolastres et ne font treuage à nullui; il vivent
They are idolaters and not make tribute to anyone they live
de char et de ris et de lait. En ce royaume treuve l'en
from meat and from rice and from milk In this kingdom finds one
les dyamans, et vous dirai comment. Il ont moult granz
the diamonds and to-you I-will-tell how They have very great
montaignes; et en yver fait moult grans pluies, et voient
mountains and in winter makes very great rains and see
les yaues descendant par ces montaignes à grant bruit
the waters descending through these mountains with great noise
faisant, et à moult grans ruisseaux. Et quant les pluies
making and with very great streams And when the rains
sont passées, et l'yaue des montaignes est escoulée, si
are passed and the-water of-the mountains is run-off so
cerchent par où l'yaue est escoulée de ces ruisseaux, et
they-search by where the-water is run-off from these streams and
en treuvent assez. Et quant vient à l'esté, il fait si grant
thereof find plenty And when comes to the-summer it makes so great
chaut en ces montaignes, pour le soleil, que nulz n'y
heat in these mountains for the sun that anyone not-there

puet à grant paine aler; et ne treuve l'en goute d'yaue. Et
can with great pain go and not finds one drop of-water And
les genz qui vont par ces montaignes en treuvent assez.
the people who go through these mountains thereof find plenty
Et si y a tant de serpens grans et grosses, et d'autres
And so there are so-many of serpents great and thick and of-other
vermines, par la grant chaleur qui y est, que c'est merveille.
vermin for the great heat which there is that it-is marvel
Et si sont les plus venimeuses serpens du monde; si que les
And so are the most venomous serpents of-the world so that the
hommes qui y vont, y vont en grant peril, et ont grant
men who there go there go in great peril and have great
paour. Et pluseurs fois sont mengiez de celle male vermine.
fear And several times they-are eaten by that evil vermin

Et si a encore, par ces montaignes, grans valées et
And so there-are further through these mountains great valleys and
parfondes que nulz ne puet aval descendre. Et les hommes
deep that anyone not can down descend And the men
qui y vont pour les dyamans, si prennent char la plus
who there go for the diamonds so take meat the most
maigre qu'il pueent avoir, et la getent là aval. Et il y
lean that-they can have and it throw there down And it there
a moult d'aigles blans qui demeurent en ces montaignes, qui
is many of-eagles white which dwell in these mountains which
menjuent les serpens que il puent ataindre, et s'en
eat the serpents which they can reach and themselves-therewith
paissent. Et quant il voient celle char gitée là aval, si la
feed And when they see that meat thrown there down so it
prennent, et la portent là sus à leurs piez, sur aucune
they-take and it carry there up at their feet upon some
roche pour bequier la. Et les hommes qui sont au gait,
rock for to-peck it And the men who are on-the watch

vont là au plustost qu'il pueent pour chassier les. Et
go there at-the soonest that-they can for to-chase them And
quant ilz les ont chaciez si prennent la char et la treuvent
when they them have chased so they-take the meat and it find
toute plaine de dyamans qui là aval s'y sont
all full of diamonds which there down themselves-there are
atachiez. Car sachiez que il y en a tant par ces valées
stuck For know that it there thereof is so-many through these valleys
parfondes que c'est merveilles. Mais l'en ne puet descendre
deep that it-is marvels But one not can descend
là aval. Et d'autre part il y a tant de serpens là aval,
there down And on-other part it there is so-many of serpents there down
que celui qui y descendroit seroit maintenant devourez.
that he who there would-descend would-be at-once devoured

Encore treuvent il les dyamans en une autre maniere; car
Further find they the diamonds in an other manner for
il vont aus nis de ces aigles blans, où il en a moult, et
they go to-the nests of these eagles white where it thereof is many and
en treuvent moult en leur ordure que il transgloutissent
thereof find many in their dung which they swallow
quant il recueillent la char que ces hommes getent en ces
when they gather the meat which these men throw into these
valées. Et quant il prennent de ces aigles, si treuvent aussi
valleys And when they take of these eagles so they-find also
ces dyamans dedens leur ventres; si que en telle maniere ont
these diamonds within their bellies so that in such manner have
il dyamans assez et de moult gros. Car ceus qui viennent
they diamonds plenty and of very big For those which come
en nos parties ne sont fors la remansille des autres grans
into our parts not are but the remnant of-the others great
et bons. Car la flor des dyamans et des grosses pierres,
and good For the flower of-the diamonds and of-the big stones

et des grosses perles, sont toutes portées au grant Kaan,
and of-the big pearls are all carried to-the great Khan
et aus autres roys et princes de ces diverses parties du
and to-the other kings and princes of these diverse parts of-the
siecle; lesquelz ont tout le grant tresor du monde.
world who have all the great treasure of-the world

Et sachiez que en nulle partie du siecle ne treuve l'en
And know that in any part of-the world not finds one
nul dyamant, fors que en cest regne de Mutfily. Encore
any diamond except that in this realm of Mutfili Further
y fait l'en les meilleurs bouguerans du monde et les
there makes one the best buckrams of-the world and the
plus soubtils, et ceus qui sont de greigneur vaillance. Il
most fine and those which are of greatest worth They
ont les greigneurs moutons du monde; et si ont grant
have the greatest sheep of-the world and so have great
habondance de toutes choses de vivre.
abundance of all things of living

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si vous
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So to-you
dirai avant d'une province qui a à nom Lar, dont les
I-will-tell forward of-a province which has as name Lar from-which the
Abramains sont.
Abraiamans are

The Abraiamans of Lar are the most truthful merchants in the world, eating no meat, drinking no wine, and wearing a cotton thread across the breast. They live by omens: on a set day a man trades only if his shadow is as long as he is, and he drops a bargain if a tarantula comes from the wrong side and turns back if a swallow does. Their Chughi monks live to two hundred on drinks of quicksilver and sulfur. Some go naked, saying naked flesh is no shame to the sinless, kill nothing that has a soul, and test novices with maidens. They burn their dead so that worms will not starve.

Cy dist de la province de Lar dont les Abramains sont. 172
Here tells of the province of Lar from-which the Abraiamans are

Lar est une province qui est vers ponent. Quant l'en se
Lar is a province which is toward west When one himself
part du lieu où le corps saint Thomas est, [si entre l'en
departs from-the place where the body saint Thomas is so enters one
assez tost apres en ceste province]; et touz les Abramains du
quite soon after into this province and all the Abraiamans of-the
monde sont nez de ci. Et sachiez que ces Abramains sont des
world are born from here And know that these Abraiamans are of-the
meilleurs marcheans du monde et des plus veritables, car il
best merchants of-the world and of-the most truthful for they
ne diroit mensonge pour riens du monde. Il ne menguent
not would-say lie for anything of-the world They not eat
char, ne ne boivent vin, et vivent moult de honneste vie; ne
meat nor not drink wine and live much of honest life nor
ne font luxure, fors avecques leurs moulliers; ne ne toldroient
not commit lust except with their wives nor not would-take
riens de l'autrui pour nul chose du monde, selonc leur
anything of the-other's for any thing of-the world according-to their
loy. Et touz portent un fil de coton devant le piz et
law And all wear a thread of cotton before the breast and

derriere les espaules pour estre congneus. Il ont roy riche
behind the shoulders for to-be known They have king rich
et puissant, et achate volentiers pierres et perles grosses et
and powerful and he-buys willingly stones and pearls big and
de grant vaillance; et envoie ces Abramains marcheans partout
of great worth and sends these Abraiamans merchants through
le monde pour qu'il li portent toutes celles qu'ils puent
the world for that-they to-him bring all those which-they can
avoir; et il leur donne deux tans que elles ne coustent.
have and he to-them gives two times what they — cost
Si que, pour ceste achoison, en a moult grant tresor.
So that for this occasion thereof he-has very great treasure
Ces Abramains sont ydres et gardent plus aus seignaus
These Abraiamans are idolaters and heed more to-the signs
et aus aventures que gent du monde. Et si ont entr'eus
and to-the omens than people of-the world And so they-have among-them
un jour en la semaine establi. Et quant est celui jour au
a day in the week established And when is that day in-the
matin, et il se regarde quant il se vest, se il voit son
morning and he himself looks when he himself dresses if he sees his
ombre au matin au soleil si lonc comme il est, si fait
shadow in-the morning in-the sun so long as he is so he-makes
ses marchiez de maintenant; et se son ombre ne fust si lonc,
his bargains from at-once and if his shadow not were so long
si ne feroit celui jour nul marchie. Et quant il sont
so not he-would-make that day any bargain And when they are
en l'ostel, et il ont à faire aucun marchie, et il veissent
in the-house and they have to do some bargain and they saw
venir aucune tarente par le mur, car il y en a moult
come some tarantula along the wall for it there thereof is many
en cel pays, se elle vient de la part qui bon li semble,
in that country if it comes from the part which good to-him seems

si complie son marchie de maintenant; et se elle vient de
so he-completes his bargain from at-once and if it comes from
part qui ne li semble pas bonne, si ne compliroit pas
part which not to-him seems at-all good so not he-would-complete at-all
le marchie en nulle maniere. Et quant il issent de leurs
the bargain in any manner And when they go-out of their
maisons et il oient aucun estoumir, se il li semble bon,
houses and they hear some sneeze if it to-him seems good
il va avant, et se il li semble mauvais, si s'assiet jus,
he goes forward and if it to-him seems bad so himself-he-sits down
tant comme bon li semble. Et encore quant il vont par
as-long as good to-him seems And further when they go by
aucun chemin, et une arondelle passe, et elle vient selonc
some road and a swallow passes and it comes according-to
leur volenté, il iroit avant, ou se non, il retorneroit arriere;
their will he would-go forward or if not he would-return back
si que il sont pieres que patarins de toutes choses. Il vivent
so that they are worse than heretics in all things They live
moult de grans abstinences qu'il font de pou mengier. Il
much of great abstinences which-they make of little eating They
ne se font point seigner, ne traire point de sanc d'eus.
not themselves make whit bleed nor draw whit of blood from-them

Il y a une autre maniere de gent qui s'appellent Çaiguy,
It there is an other manner of people who themselves-call Chughi
qui sont de ces Abramains meismes; mais il sont comme
who are of these Abraiamans same but they are as
de religion, et servent à leurs ydoles. Il vivent moult, car
of religion and serve to their idols They live much for
il vivent .c. et .l. (cent et cinquante) ans, ou .ij.
they live a-hundred and fifty hundred and fifty years or two
cens, chascun d'eus. Et menjuent moult pou, mais bonnes
hundred each of-them And they-eat very little but good

viandes; et usent moult char et ris et lait. Encore boivent,
foods and use much meat and rice and milk Further drink
ceus, moult estrange buvrage; car il prennent argent vif et
those very strange drink for they take silver quick and
souffre, et en font buvrages; et mellent tout ensamble et le
sulfur and thereof make drinks and mix all together and it
boivent. Et dient que il leur croist la vie, et le font deux
drink And they-say that it for-them increases the life and it do two
foiz chascun mois. Et si usent ce buvrage des leur enfance.
times each month And so they-use this drink from their childhood

Et si a aucun de ceste religion qui font la plus aspre
And so there-are some of this religion who lead the most harsh
vie du monde; et vont touz nuz, et aourent le buef. Et les
life of-the world and go all naked and worship the ox And the
plusieurs si ont un petit buef d'arain ou de laiton, ou d'or, lequel
many so have a little ox of-bronze or of brass or of-gold which
il portent lié à leur front. Et prennent les os du buef, et
they wear bound to their forehead And they-take the bones of-the ox and
les ardent et en font poudre; et de celle poudre si font
them burn and thereof make powder and with that powder so they-make
oingnement et s'en oingnent à grant reverence.
ointment and themselves-therewith anoint with great reverence

Il ne menguent ne en escuelle, ne en taillouoirs; mais
They not eat nor in bowl nor on trenchers but
metent leurs viandes sur fueilles d'arbres de pommier de
put their foods upon leaves of-trees of apple of
paradis, et sur autres grans fueilles aussi; mais non mie
paradise and upon other great leaves also but not at-all
vers; mais seiches. Car ils dient que les vers ont ame.
green but dry For they say that the green-ones have soul
Et seroit pechiez. Et avant se laisseroient il morir
And it-would-be sin And rather themselves would-let they die

qu'il feissent chose qu'il cuidassent qu'il fust pechie
than-they should-do thing which-they thought that-it were sin
selonc leur loy. Et quant aucun leur demande pourquoi
according-to their law And when someone them asks why
il vont touz nus, et que il n'en ont nulle honte; si
they go all naked and that they not-thereof have any shame so
dient: «Nous allons nuz pour ce que nous ne voulons nulle
they-say We go naked for this that we not wish any
chose de cest siecle, et que nous venismes touz nus en
thing of this world and that we came all naked into
cest monde. D'autres part, que nous sommes justes sanz
this world On-other part that we are just without
pechie, et que nous ne faisons nul pechie de notre vilain
sin and that we not do any sin with our base
membre; si que pour ce le povons aussi bien monstrer que
member so that for this it we-can as well show as
nul de nos autres membres. Mais vous autres, qui faites le
any of our other members But you others who do the
pechie de luxure, si avez vergoigne, et le portez couvert.»
sin of lust so have shame and it wear covered

Il n'occirroient nulle beste pour riens du monde; ne puce,
They not-would-kill any beast for anything of-the world nor flea
ne mouche, ne nulle autre chose vive; car il dient qu'il ont
nor fly nor any other thing living for they say that-they have
âme et que ce seroit pechiez. Il ne menguent nulle chose
soul and that this would-be sin They not eat any thing
vert, jusque à tant qu'elle soit seche. Et si dorment sus la
green until to such-time that-it be dry And so they-sleep upon the
terre touz nus; et si n'ont nulle chose ne dessus ne dessouz.
earth all naked and so not-have any thing nor above nor beneath
Et c'est bien grant merveille comment il ne muerent tuit. Et
And this-is well great marvel how they not die all And

si jeunent tout l'an, chascun jour, et boivent yaue. Et quant
so they-fast all the-year each day and drink water And when
il veulent recevoir aucun, si le tiennent en leur abbaie, et
they wish to-receive someone so him they-keep in their abbey and
li font mener leur vie. Et puis, quant il le veulent prover,
to-him make lead their life And then when they him wish to-test
si envoient querre de ces pucelles qui sont offertes à leurs
so they-send seek of these maidens who are offered to their
ydoles, si comme je vous ai dit; et le font touchier et baisier
idols so as I to-you have said and him make touch and kiss
et acoler. Et se son membre ne se muet, si le retiennent;
and embrace And if his member not itself moves so him they-retain
et se il se muet, si le chassent de leur compaignie. Car
and if it itself moves so him they-drive from their company For
il dient qu'il ne veulent tenir homme de luxure avec eus.
they say that-they not wish to-keep man of lust with them

Il sont si crueus et si parfais ydolastres que c'est une
They are so cruel and so perfect idolaters that it-is a
deablerie. Et dient que il font ardoir les corps mors pour ce
devilry And they-say that they make burn the bodies dead for this
que s'il n'estoient ars, feroient il vers qui mengeroient ces
that if-they not-were burned would-make they worms which would-eat these
corps. Et quant il n'auroient plus que mengier, si morroient;
bodies And when they not-would-have more what eat so they-would-die
et que l'ame du corps en auroit grant pechie et grant
and that the-soul of-the body thereof would-have great sin and great
paine. Et c'est la raison pourquoi il ardent les corps mors.
pain And this-is the reason why they burn the bodies dead

Or vous avons conté une grant partie de ces genz, et de
Now to-you we-have told a great part of these people and of
leur maniere, qui sont en la grant province de Maabar. Si
their manner who are in the great province of Maabar So

vous conterons ci avant des autres choses de ceste province
to-you we-will-tell here forward of-the other things of this province
meismes de Maabar, et dirai d'une cité qui a nom Cail.
same of Maabar and I-will-tell of-a city which has name Cail

XXXI · CAIL AND COILUM

Cail belongs to Asciar, one of the five brothers, and its port takes the ships of Hormuz, Kish, Aden, and Arabia. The king has three hundred wives, and the brothers' mother keeps them from war by threatening to cut off the breasts that fed them, though once she dies they will surely destroy one another. Coilum, five hundred miles southwest, has a few Christians, fine brazilwood, ginger, pepper from planted trees, and indigo made in a sun so hot that an egg would cook in a river. Its lions are black and its parrots white, red, and blue, and its naked people marry their cousins.

Cy devise de la cité de Cail. 173
Here describes of the city of Cail

Cail est une noble cité et grant, et est de Aciar le
Cail is a noble city and great and is of Asciar the
frere des quatre roys. Et à ceste cité font porter toutes
brother of-the four kings And to this city make put-in all
les nefs qui viennent de vers ponent: ce est de Hormes,
the ships which come from toward west this is from Hormuz
et de Quis et d'Adem; et de toute l'Arabie; lesquelles
and from Kish and from-Aden and from all the-Arabia which
viennent chargiées de chevaus et d'autres marchandises. Et
come laden with horses and with-other merchandises And
est pour ce que, du pais environ y vient chascun;
it-is for this that from-the country around there comes each
et se fait grant marchandises en ceste cité de Cail.
and itself makes great merchandises in this city of Cail

Le roy est moult riche de tresor et porte sus soy moult
The king is very rich in treasure and wears upon himself many
de riches pierres précieuses. Et va moult honnourablement,
of rich stones precious And goes very honorably
et maintient bien son regne en grant justice. Et aime
and maintains well his realm in great justice And loves
moult les marcheans et les forestiers; si que pour ce y
much the merchants and the strangers so that for this there
va chascun volentiers.
goes each willingly

Le roy a bien trois cens femmes; car celui qui plus a
The king has fully three hundred wives for him who most has
de femmes, si le tiennent a moult grant honneur. Et, si
of wives so him they-hold in very great honor And so
comme je vous ai dit, il a en ceste grant province de
as I to-you have said it there-is in this great province of
Maabar cinq roys couronnez qui sont tuit frere charnel; et
Maabar five kings crowned who are all brothers carnal and
cestui est l'un d'eus. Leur mere est encore vive. Et quant
this-one is one of-them Their mother is still alive And when
il sont à descort et qu'il sont à ost l'un contre l'autre,
they are at discord and that-they are on host the-one against the-other
leur mere se met ou milieu, et ne les laisse combattre.
their mother herself puts in-the middle and not them lets fight
Et se vousissent en toutes manières combatre ensemble, si
And if they-wished in all manners to-fight together so
prent, leur mere, un coustel et leur dit qu'elle se taillera
takes their mother a knife and to-them says that-she herself will-cut
les mamelles dont il alaiterent, puis se fendra le ventre
the breasts from-which they sucked then herself will-split the belly
où il tournerent; si qu'elle s'occirra. Et par ceste maniere
where they turned so that-she herself-will-kill And by this manner

les a maintes fois fait remaindre. Mais il ne puet
them she-has many times made stay But it not can
faillir, quant elle morra, que il ne destruisent l'un l'autre.
fail when she will-die that they — destroy the-one the-other
Or vous lairons à conter de ce roy. Si vous conterons
Now you we-will-leave to tell of this king So to-you we-will-tell
du royaume de Coilun.
of-the kingdom of Coilum

Cy devise du royaume de Coilun. 174
Here describes of-the kingdom of Coilum

Quant l'en se part de Maabar, et l'en va .v. (cinq)
When one himself departs from Maabar and one goes five five
cens milles par garbin, si treuve l'en le royaume de Coilun
hundred miles by southwest so finds one the kingdom of Coilum
qui sont ydolatres. Et si y a aucuns crestiens; si ont
who are idolaters And so there are some Christians so they-have
language par eus. Et si ont roy. Il ne font à nullui
language by themselves And so they-have king They not make to anyone
treuaige. Il y a moult de bresil que l'en appelle bresil
tribute It there is much of brazil which one calls brazil
coiluny pour le pays où il naist; et est moult fin. Et si y
Coilumin for the country where it grows and it-is very fine And so there
croist gingembre aussi bon, que l'en appelle coiluny pour le
grows ginger also good which one calls Coilumin for the
pays. Et encore y croist poivre en grant habondance par
country And further there grows pepper in great abundance through
tout le pays; et vous dirai comment il croist. Sachiez que
all the country and to-you I-will-tell how it grows Know that
il sont arbres damechiers, et les plantent, et recueillent le
they are trees cultivated and them plant and gather the
poivre du mois de may et de juing et de juliet. Et encore
pepper in-the month of May and of June and of July And further

ont il inde en habondance moult fin. Et le font d'herbe par
have they indigo in abundance very fine And it make of-herb by
force du soleil, qui est moult chaut. Car il a en ceste
force of-the sun which is very hot For it there-is in this
contrée si grant chaleur que à painnes y puet l'en durer.
country so great heat that with pains there can one endure
Car si vous metiez un oef dedens un flun si seroit il moult
For if you put an egg within a river so would-be it very
tost cuit pour la chaleur du soleil qui est moult chaut.
soon cooked for the heat of-the sun which is very hot

Les marcheans du Manzi et du Levant et d'Arrabe y
The merchants of-the Manzi and of-the East and of-Arabia there
viennent atoutes leurs nefs et leurs marcheandises; et il font
come with-all their ships and their merchandises and they make
moult grans gaains. Il a en cest regne moult diverses bestes,
very great gains It there-is in this realm very diverse beasts
et toutes celles du monde moult devisées. Car leur lyons sont
and all those of-the world very different For their lions are
tuit noir. Et si a papegaus de moult de manières; car il y
all black And so there-are parrots of many of manners for it there
en a de blans comme noif; et le bec et les piez vermaus.
thereof is of white-ones as snow and the beak and the feet vermilion
Et si en y a aussi de vermaus; et des bloiz qui sont la
And so thereof there are also of red-ones and of-the blue-ones which are the
plus belle chose du monde à veoir. Et si en y a aussi de
most fine thing of-the world to see And so thereof there are also of
moult petiz qui sont beaux; et si y a aussi des vers.
very little-ones which are fine and so there are also of-the green-ones

Il ont encore paons moult beaux, greigneurs assez que
They have further peacocks very fine greater much than
les nostres et d'autres façons. Et si ont gelinnes moult
the ours and of-other fashions And so they-have hens very

devisées des nostres, qui sont plus belles et meilleurs.
different from-the ours which are more fine and better
Et si ont leurs fruiz moult estranges; et tout ce est
And so they-have their fruits very strange and all this is
pour la grant chaleur qui y est.
for the great heat which there is

Il n'ont nul blez autres que ris seulement. Il font vin de
They not-have any grains others than rice only They make wine of
sucre moult bon, et fait devenir yvre moult tost. De toutes
sugar very good and it-makes become drunk very soon Of all
autres choses de vivre, qui à corps d'homme apartient, ont il à
other things of living which to body of-man belongs have they in
grant foison et à grant marchié. Si ont astronomiens moult
great plenty and at great market So they-have astrologers very
bons et mires aussi. Et sont tuit noirs et femmes et enfans;
good and physicians also And they-are all black both women and children
et vont touz nus, fors qu'il cueuvrent leurs natures de moult
and go all naked except that-they cover their natures with very
beaux draps. Nulle luxure ne tiennent à pechié. Il se
fine cloths Any lust not they-hold for sin They themselves
marient à leurs cousines germaines; et si prennent la femme de
marry to their cousins german and so take the wife of
leur frere puis sa mort. Et touz ceux d'Inde ont ceste coustume.
their brother after his death And all those of-India have this custom

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si nous en
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So we thence
partirons et vous dirons d'une autre contrée qui a à nom
will-depart and to-you will-tell of-an other country which has as name
Comary.
Comari

At Comari one can glimpse the polestar again if one goes thirty miles out to sea. Eli, rich in pepper and ginger, has no port but deep river mouths, and it robs every ship that the weather drives there, saying their gods sent it. From Melibar and Gozurat a hundred corsair ships go out every summer with their wives and children, ranging in lines across the sea and signaling to each other with fire, so merchants sail well armed. Melibar's pepper and ginger go east to Manzi and west by Aden to Alexandria, though the west takes not a tenth of what the east does.

175 Cy dit de la contrée de Comary.

Here tells of the country of Comari

Comary est une contrée d'Inde meismes, de laquelle se

Comari is a country of-India same from which itself

puet veoir aucune chose de l'estoille tramontane, laquelle ne

can see some thing of the-star north which not

se puet veoir de la mendre isle de Java en ça. Et quant

itself can see from the lesser isle of Java on here And when

l'en la veut veoir, si va l'en bien .xxx. (trente) milles en mer,

one it wishes to-see so goes one fully thirty thirty miles into sea

et la voit on bien .i. coute haut. Il est moult sauvage lieu;

and it sees one fully a cubit high It is very wild place

et si y a bestes de toutes façons, et proprement singes

and so there are beasts of all fashions and especially apes

qui sont si devisez que vous diriez que il sont hommes.

which are so fashioned that you would-say that they are men

Et si y a aussi ours, lyons et lupars assez. Et si a

And so there are also bears lions and leopards plenty And so there-are

moult de granz paluz et moult grans pantains à merveilles.

many of great marshes and very great swamps to marvels

Autres choses n'y a qui à conter face. Si nous
Other things not-there is which to tell may-make So we
en partirons, et vous conterons d'un autre royaume qui
thence will-depart and to-you will-tell of-an other kingdom which
a nom Ely, si comme vous pourrez oïr et entendre.
has name Eli so as you will-be-able hear and understand

Cy devise du royaume de Ely. 176
Here describes of-the kingdom of Eli

Ely est un royaume vers ponent, loins de Comary
Eli is a kingdom toward west far from Comari
entour .ccc. (trois cens) milles; et sont ydolastres; et
about three-hundred three hundred miles and they-are idolaters and
ont roy, et ne font treu a nullui; et si ont language par
have king and not make tribute to anyone and so have language by
eus. Desormais entrons en plus damesches lieus. En ceste
themselves Henceforth we-enter into more tame places In this
province n'a nul port, mais il a moult de fluns et
province not-there-is any port but it there-is many of rivers and
grans, qui ont bonnes fouis et grans et parfondes. Il y
great which have good mouths and great and deep It there
croist poivre et gingembre, et autres espices à grant foison.
grows pepper and ginger and other spices in great plenty
Leur roy est moult riche de tresor; mais il n'est pas moult
Their king is very rich in treasure but he not-is at-all very
puissant de gent. Mais son regne est si fort que nulz n'y
powerful in people But his realm is so strong that anyone not-there
puet ostoier sus lui; si que pour ce il ne doute nullui. Et
can make-war upon him so that for this he not fears anyone And
sachiez que se il avenist que aucune nef venist en leur fouis,
know that if it happened that some ship came into their mouths
et sourdist là; si la prennent et robent, se elle vouloit aler
and put-in there so it they-take and rob if it wished to-go

autre part. Et leur dient: «Vous voulez aler en autre part,
other part And to-them they-say You wish to-go into other part
et noz diex vous a ci amenez à nous; si que nous devons
and our gods you have here brought to us so that we must
avoir tout le vostre.» Et n'y croient avoir nul pechié.
have all the yours And not-there they-believe to-have any sin
Mais se elle vient en leur pays il la reçoivent à honneur
But if it comes into their country they it receive with honor
et sont bien gardé et sauvé. Et cest mauvais usage ont il
and are well guarded and saved And this evil usage have they
en toute Inde, que se aucune nef va en son voyage, et par
in all India that if some ship goes on its voyage and by
mal temps va en autre part; il sont tuit robé. Mais les
bad weather goes into other part they are all robbed But the
nefs du Manzi d'autre partie qui y viennent l'esté, si
ships of-the Manzi from-other part which there come the-summer so
chargent en .vj. (six) jours ou en .viij. (huit) et s'en
load in six six days or in eight eight and themselves-thence
partent au plustost qu'il pevent; pour ce (que) il n'y
depart at-the soonest that-they can for this that it not-there
a port nul que esplaje et sablon autres que les fouys. Mais
is port any but beach and sand others than the mouths But
les nefs du Manzi portent si grans ancres de fust, que
the ships of-the Manzi carry so great anchors of wood that
il seuffrent moult de grans fortunes aus plajes. Il y a
they suffer many of great storms at-the beaches It there is
moult de lyons et d'autres fieres bestes moult venimeuses.
many of lions and of-other fierce beasts very venomous
Et si ont chassoison assez de bestes et d'oiseaux.
And so they-have hunting plenty of beasts and of-birds

Autre chose qui à conter face n'y a. Si vous
Other thing which to tell may-make not-there is So to-you
conterons du royaume de Melibar.
we-will-tell of-the kingdom of Melibar

Cy devise du royaume de Melibar. 177
Here describes of-the kingdom of Melibar

Melibar est un grant royaume vers ponent; e ont
Melibar is a great kingdom toward west and they-have
langage par eus. Et sont ydres. Il ont roy et ne font
language by themselves And they-are idolaters They have king and not make
treu à nullui. Et de cest royaume pert plus l'estoille de
tribute to anyone And from this kingdom appears more the-star of
tramontaine, qui pert plus haute que l'yaue deux coutes.
north which appears more high than the-water two cubits
Sachiez que de ce royaume de Melibar, et d'un autre
Know that from this kingdom of Melibar and from-an other
qui a nom Gazurat, issent chacun an, plus de cent
which has name Gozurat issue each year more than hundred
nefs, lesquelles vont en cours sus chacune. Et demeurent
ships which go on course upon each-one And they-stay
tout l'esté; et mainnent avec eus leur femmes et leur
all the-summer and lead with them their wives and their
enfans. Il s'assamblent .xx. (vingt) nefs ou .xxx. (trente)
children They themselves-assemble twenty twenty ships or thirty thirty
ensemble, de ces courseaus; et vont cinq ou six milles l'une
together of these corsairs and go five or six miles the-one
loins de l'autre; si que il tiennent grant place de la mer,
far from the-other so that they hold great space of the sea
à ce que nulle nef de marchans n'y passent qu'il ne
to this that any ship of merchants not-there pass that-they not
la prennent. Et maintenant que il voient aucuns voilles, si
it take And at-once that they see some sails so

font feu ou fumées pour seignal, et là s'assemblent tuit
they-make fire or smokes for signal and there themselves-assemble all
ensemble; et la prennent et robent touz les marcheans. Et
together and it take and rob all the merchants And
puis les laissent aler et leur dient: «Aler gaaignier, car par
then them they-let go and to-them say Go gain for by
aventure il sera encore nostre.» Mais les marcheans le sevent
chance it will-be again ours But the merchants it know
orendroit, et vont si appareillié et garni d'armes et de
now and go so equipped and furnished with-arms and with
genz, et atout si grant nef que il ne les doutent point;
people and with-all so great ship that they not them fear whit
se n'est par aucune mesaventure qui leur vient aucune fois.
if not-is by some mischance which to-them comes some time

Il a en ce regne grant quantité de poivre et de
It there-is in this realm great quantity of pepper and of
gingembre et de canelle, et de turbit et de nois d'Inde.
ginger and of cinnamon and of turbit and of nuts of-India
Et si y fait on moult fins bouguerans et beaux. Les
And so there makes one very fine buckrams and fine The
nefs qui viennent du Levant leur apportent arain que
ships which come from-the East to-them bring copper which
il mettent en leur nef pour savoure. Et si leur aportent
they put in their ship for ballast And so to-them they-bring
encore draps à or, et cendaus, et soie et draps de soie; et
further cloths of gold and sendals and silk and cloths of silk and
or et argent, girofles et autres espices soutilz, lesquelles il
gold and silver cloves and other spices fine which they
leur vendent, se il n'en ont; et puis achatent de celles
to-them sell if they not-thereof have and then buy of those
que il ont, se il veulent. Si que l'espicerie grosse qui ist
which they have if they wish So that the-spicery coarse which issues

de ce royaume et va à la grant province du Manzi, et
from this kingdom and goes to the great province of-the Manzi and
envers ponent, que les marcheans portent en leur nefs qui
toward west which the merchants carry in their ships which
vont à Aden, celle (espicerie) va puis en Alixandre; mais
go to Aden that spicery goes then to Alexandria but
ce n'est pas de .x. (dix) nefs une de celle qui va vers le
it not-is at-all of ten ten ships one of that which goes toward the
Levant; lequel est moult grant fait, si comme je vous ai dit.
East which is very great deed so as I to-you have said

Or vous ai conté du royaume de Melibar; si irons avant
Now to-you I-have told of-the kingdom of Melibar so we-will-go forward
et vous conterons du royaume de Gazurat, ainsi comme vous
and to-you will-tell of-the kingdom of Gozurat thus as you
porrez oir. Et sachiez que de ces royaumes il ne vous est
will-be-able hear And know that of these kingdoms it not to-you is
conté fors de la maistre cité seulement; mais des autres citez
told except of the master city only but of-the other cities
et chasteaux, dont il a grant quantité, ne vous disons nous
and castles of-which it there-is great quantity not to-you tell we
riens, pour ce que trop seroit lointainne chose à tout conter.
anything for this that too-much would-be distant thing to all tell

The corsairs of Gozurat give their prisoners tamarind to make them pass any pearls they have swallowed. Gozurat has cotton trees six paces high and dresses quantities of leather, embroidering red leather with gold and silver thread. In Tana the king lets corsairs rob merchants on condition that he gets their horses, which the book calls no work of a king. Cambaet, where the polestar rises higher still, trades in indigo, buckram, cotton, and leather and has no corsairs.

178 Cy devise du royaume de Gazurat.

Here describes of-the kingdom of Gozurat

Gazurat est un grant royaume; et sont ydolatres, et ont

Gozurat is a great kingdom and they-are idolaters and have

langages par eus. Et ont roy; et ne font treu à nullui.

languages by themselves And they-have king and not make tribute to anyone

Et est vers ponent; et pert encore plus de ce royaume la

And it-is toward west and appears further more from this kingdom the

tramontaine; car elle pert haut entour .vi. (six) coutées. Il sont

north-star for it appears high about six six cubits They are

des greigneurs coursaus du monde. Et si font, ces coursaus,

of-the greatest corsairs of-the world And so make these corsairs

une grande mauvaistié telle comme je vous dirai. Car quant

a great wickedness such as I to-you will-tell For when

il ont pris une nef de marcheans, si donnent aux marcheans

they have taken a ship of merchants so they-give to-the merchants

à faire et à boire une chose qui a nom tamarandi, qui leur

to make and to drink a thing which has name tamarind which them

fait tout aler hors, ce qu'il ont ou ventre, pour ce que,

makes all go out that which-they have in-the belly for this that

quant les marcheans voient qu'il sont pris, si transgloutissent

when the merchants see that-they are taken so they-swallow

les perles et pierres, quant il ont seu qu'il sont de grant
the pearls and stones when they have known that-they are of great
vaillance. Et par ceste voie les ont toutes, les coursaus.
worth And by this way them have all the corsairs

Il y a en ceste province de Gazurat moult de poivre,
It there is in this province of Gozurat much of pepper
et de gingembre et d'inde. Et si ont aussi moult de
and of ginger and of-indigo And so they-have also much of
coton. Et les arbres qui font le coton sont bien haut
cotton And the trees which make the cotton are fully high
six pas; et sont vielx bien de vingt ans. Mais bien est
six paces and are old fully of twenty years But well is
voir, quant les arbres sont si vielx, le coton que il font
true when the trees are so old the cotton which they make
n'est pas bon pour filer; mais pour faire autres services.
not-is at-all good for spinning but for make other services

L'en adoube moult grant quantité de cuiran en ce pays,
One dresses very great quantity of leather in this country
en chascune maniere; et cuir de bec, et de buef, et de
in each manner and hide of goat and of ox and of
bugle et de bues sauvages, et de unicornes, et de maintes
buffalo and of oxen wild and of unicorns and of many
autres bestes. Et y en adoube l'en tant, que on en
other beasts And there thereof dresses one so-much that one therewith
charge chascun an plusieurs nefs, qui vont par Arabie et
loads each year several ships which go by Arabia and
par autre part. Et si y fait on moult belles oeuvres de
by other part And so there makes one very fine works of
cuir vermeil entaillié à oiseaux et à bestes moult belles
leather red carved with birds and with beasts very fine
et cousues de fil d'or et d'argent moult soubtilement.
and sewn with thread of-gold and of-silver very subtly

Et sont si belles que c'est une merveille à veoir. Et si
And they-are so fine that it-is a marvel to see And so
en y a de telles qui valent bien dix mars d'argent.
thereof there are of such which are-worth fully ten marks of-silver

Autre chose n'y a en ce royaume qui à conter face.
Other thing not-there is in this kingdom which to tell may-make
Si vous conterai, ci avant, d'un autre royaume qui a à
So to-you I-will-tell here forward of-an other kingdom which has as
nom Tanaim.
name Tana

179 Cy devise du royaume de Tanaim.
Here describes of-the kingdom of Tana

Tanaim est uns grans royaumes vers ponent, moult grant, et
Tana is a great kingdom toward west very great and
bon. Et ont roy; et ne font treu à nullui. Et sont ydolatres,
good And they-have king and not make tribute to anyone And they-are idolaters
et ont langage par eus. Et si n'y croist ne poivre, ne
and have language by themselves And so not-there grows nor pepper nor
autre espicerie; mais encens y croist il assez et est brun, et
other spicery but incense there grows it plenty and it-is brown and
s'en fait grans marchandises. Et si y fait l'en cuirains
itself-thereof makes great merchandises And so there makes one leather
assez; et si y fait l'en moult de bons bouguerans et de beaus.
plenty and so there makes one many of good buckrams and of fine-ones

Il ist de ce royaume moult de coursaus, par la volenté
There issues from this kingdom many of corsairs by the will
leur roy, qui robent les marcheans. Et si ont covenant, ces
(of-)their king who rob the merchants And so they-have covenant these
coursaus, à leur roy, que touz les chevaus que il prendront
corsairs with their king that all the horses which they will-take
seront siens; et toutes les autres choses seront leur. Et ce
will-be his and all the other things will-be theirs And this

fait, le roy, pour ce qu'il n'a nuls chevaus; et que moult de
does the king for this that-he not-has any horses and that many of
chevaus vont en Inde; car il n'y a nef nulle, qui voist là,
horses go into India for it not-there is ship any which go there
qui ne portent chevaus et d'autres marchandises assez. Aussi
which not carry horses and of-other merchandises plenty So
que c'est une mauvaise chose et n'est mie oeuvre de roy.
that this-is an evil thing and not-is at-all work of king
Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si vous dirons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So to-you we-will-tell
ci avant d'un autre royaume qui est appelé Cambaet.
here forward of-an other kingdom which is called Cambaet

Cy devise du royaume de Cambaet. 180
Here describes of-the kingdom of Cambaet

Cambaet est un grant royaume vers ponent. Et ont roy,
Cambaet is a great kingdom toward west And they-have king
et ont langage par eus. Et sont ydolatres, et ne font treu
and have language by themselves And they-are idolaters and not make tribute
à nullui. Et de cest regne voit l'en plus l'estoille tramontaine.
to anyone And from this realm sees one more the-star north
Car des ores mais tant comme vous irez plus par ponent,
For from now more as-far as you will-go more by west
tant la verrez vous plus haute. Il se fait moult grant
so-much it will-see you more high It itself makes very great
marchandise en ce royaume. Et si y a inde moult bon en
merchandise in this kingdom And so there is indigo very good in
grant habondance. Et il fait l'en moult de fins bouguerans.
great abundance And it makes one many of fine buckrams
Et si y a coton assez, si que d'illec le porte l'en en assez
And so there is cotton plenty so that from-there it carries one into plenty
de lieus. Et si si fait grans marchandises de cuirian qui est
of places And so so makes great merchandises of leather which is

adoubés moult bien. En ce royaume n'a nuls coursaus et
dressed very well In this kingdom not-there-are any corsairs and
sont bonnes gens, et vivent de marchandises et de leur ars.
they-are good people and live from merchandises and from their crafts
Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si vous dirons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So to-you we-will-tell
ci avant d'un autre royaume qui est appellés Semenat.
here forward of-an other kingdom which is called Semenat

XXXIV · SEMENAT, KESMACORAN, AND THE ISLES OF THE OCEAN

Semenat and Kesmacoran are idolater kingdoms of trade; Kesmacoran is the last province of the greater India, which runs from Maabar to here. Five hundred miles to the south lie the Male and Female Islands, whose Christian men visit their wives for three months a year and take their sons at fourteen. Socotra, whose Christians are under an archbishop subject to the great archbishop at Baghdad, not the Pope, sells ambergris and buys the corsairs' plunder, and its enchanters can raise contrary winds and storms.

181 Cy dit du royaume de Semenat.
Here tells of-the kingdom of Semenat
Semenat est un grant royaume vers ponent. Et sont
Semenat is a great kingdom toward west And they-are
ydolatres. Et ont roy et langage par eus; et ne font
idolaters And they-have king and language by themselves and not make
nul treu à nullui; et vivent de marchandises et d'ars.
any tribute to anyone and live from merchandises and from-crafts
Ne n'y a nul coursaus. Il s'y fait moult grant
Nor not-there are any corsairs It itself-there makes very great
marchandise. Il sont moult crueus ydolatres.
merchandise They are very cruel idolaters

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si vous
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So to-you
dirons avant d'un autre regne qui a nom Quesivacuran.
we-will-tell forward of-an other realm which has name Kesmacoran

Cy dist du royaume de Quesivacuran. 182
Here tells of-the kingdom of Kesmacoran

Quesivacuran est un royaume; et a roy, et langage
Kesmacoran is a kingdom and has king and language
par soi. Et sont ydolatres et vivent de marchandises et
by itself And they-are idolaters and live from merchandises and
d'ars; car il vivent comme marchans; et ont marchandises
from-crafts for they live as merchants and have merchandises
assez, par mer et par terre, de toutes pars. Il vivent
plenty by sea and by land from all parts They live
de char et de ris et de lait.
from meat and from rice and from milk

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Et sachiez que
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make And know that
ce royaume de Quesivacuran si est la derreniere province
this kingdom of Kesmacoran so is the last province
d'Inde, alant vers ponent et maistre. Que je vous di que
of-India going toward west and northwest For I to-you tell that
de Maabar jusques à ceste province: si est la greigneur Inde,
from Maabar as-far-as to this province so is the greater India
et la meilleur qui soit au monde. Et vous avons conté, de
and the best which be in-the world And to-you we-have told of
ceste greigneur Inde, les royaumes et les provinces et les cités
this greater India the kingdoms and the provinces and the cities
qui sont sus la mer. Car de celles qui sont en ferme terre
which are upon the sea For of those which are in firm land
ne vous avons riens dit, pour ce que ce seroit trop longue
not to-you we-have anything said for this that this would-be too long

matiere. Et pour ce nous partirons atant; et vous conterons
matter And for this we will-depart at-that and to-you will-tell
encore d'aucune isles qui sont d'Inde. Et commencerai de
further of-some isles which are of-India And I-will-begin with
deux isles qui sont appellées masle et femelle.
two isles which are called male and female

183 Cy dist de .ij. isles qui sont appellees l'une masle et l'autre
Here tells of two isles which are called the-one male and the-other
femelle, pour ce que en l'une ne demeure que femmes, et
female for this that in the-one not dwell but women and
en l'autre que hommes, si que pour ce ont il ainsi à nom.
in the-other but men so that for this have they thus as name

Et quant l'en se part de ce royaume de Quesivacuran,
And when one himself departs from this kingdom of Kesmacoran
qui est en terre ferme, et l'en va par mer entour .v. (cinq)
which is in land firm and one goes by sea about five five
cenz milles vers midi; adonc si treuve l'en les deux isles masle
hundred miles toward south then so finds one the two isles male
et femelle. Et est l'une pres de l'autre, entour .xxx. (trente)
and female And is the-one near of the-other about thirty thirty
milles. Il sont tuit crestien baptisiez et se maintiennent à
miles They are all Christians baptized and themselves maintain at
l'usage du Viel Testament; car quand leur femmes sont grosses,
the-usage of-the Old Testament for when their women are pregnant
il ne les toucheroient en aucune maniere; et quant elle a
they not them would-touch in any manner and when she has
fille, il ne la toucheroient jusques à .xl. (quarante) jours.
daughter they not her would-touch until to forty forty days

En l'isle qui est appellée masle si demeurent touz les
In the-isle which is called male so dwell all the
hommes. Et quant vient au mois de mars, si se
men And when comes to-the month of March so themselves

partent touz, et vont à l'autre isle, chacun an, trois mois:
depart all and go to the-other isle each year three months
c'est mars, et avril et may. Et en ces trois mois se
this-is March and April and May And in these three months themselves
soulacent avec leur femmes. Et au chief de ces trois moys
solace with their women And at-the end of these three months
s'en tournent arriere en leur isle; et font leur semence
themselves-thence turn back into their isle and make their sowing
et leur labour, et leur marchandise, les autres neuf mois.
and their labor and their merchandise the other nine months
Il ont en ceste isle l'ambre moult fin. Il vivent de
They have in this isle the-ambergris very fine They live from
char et de lait et de ris. Il sont moult bons peescheeurs,
meat and from milk and from rice They are very good fishermen
et prennent en leur mer moult de bons poissons et grans;
and take in their sea many of good fishes and great
et en prennent quantité moult grant, et les font sechier,
and thereof take quantity very great and them make dry
dont il ont tout l'an assez à mengier; et en vendent
from-which they have all the-year plenty to eat and thereof sell
aus marchans qui vont là. Il n'ont nul seigneur, mais
to-the merchants who go there They not-have any lord but
il ont un evesque qui est soubmis à l'arcevesque d'une
they have a bishop who is subject to the-archbishop of-an
autre isle, dont nous vous conterons ci avant, qui a nom
other isle of-which we to-you will-tell here forward which has name
Scoira. Et si ont langage par eus. Et les enfans qu'il
Socotra And so they-have language by themselves And the children which-they
engendrent en leurs femmes: se il est femelle, si demeure à
beget in their women if he is female so she-remains with
la mere; et se il est masle, si le nourrit la mere .xiiij. ans,
the mother and if he is male so him nourishes the mother fourteen years

et puis le renvoie à son pere. Et c'est la coustume de ces
and then him sends-back to his father And this-is the custom of these
deux isles. Les femmes ne font autre chose que nourir leur
two isles The women not do other thing than nourish their
enfans, et cueillir aucuns fruiz que elles ont dans leur isle.
children and gather some fruits which they have in their isle
Car les hommes les fournissent de ce que mestier leur est.
For the men them furnish with that which need to-them is
Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face; si vous dirons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make so to-you we-will-tell
avant d'une autre isle qui a nom Scoira.
forward of-an other isle which has name Socotra

184 Cy dist de l'isle de Scoira.
Here tells of the-isle of Socotra

Quant l'en se part de ces deux isles, et l'en va entour
When one himself departs from these two isles and one goes about
.v. (cinq) cenz milles vers midi, adonc treuve l'en l'isle de
five five hundred miles toward south then finds one the-isle of
Scoira. Et sont touz crestiens baptisiez; et ont arcevesque. Il
Socotra And they-are all Christians baptized and have archbishop They
ont moult d'ambre; et si ont draps de coton assez et autres
have much of-ambergris and so they-have cloths of cotton plenty and other
marchandises aussi; et proprement grant quantité de poissons
merchandises also and especially great quantity of fishes
salés gros et bons; et vivent de ris et de char et de lait;
salted big and good and live from rice and from meat and from milk
car il n'ont nuls blés; et vont touz nus, à la maniere des
for they not-have any grains and go all naked in the manner of-the
autres Indiens. Il s'y fait marchandise assez; car il y
other Indians It itself-there makes merchandise plenty for it there
vient grant navie de toutes pars, atout toutes marchandises
comes great shipping from all parts with-all all merchandises

que il vendent à ceus de ceste isle. Et si achatent de là
which they sell to those of this isle And so they-buy from there
l'or de quoi les marcheans font grant gaaing; et toutes
the-gold from which the merchants make great gain and all
les nefs qui veulent aler en Aden, si viennent en cest isle.
the ships which wish to-go to Aden so come to this isle

Cest arcevesque n'a que faire à l'apostole de Romme,
This archbishop not-has anything to-do with the-pope of Rome
mais est soubmis au grant arcevesque qui demeure à Baudas.
but is subject to-the great archbishop who dwells at Baghdad
Il commande à celui de cest isle et à pluseurs autres des
He commands to him of this isle and to several others of-the
parties de ce siecle de là; aussi comme fait nostre pape de ça.
parts of this world of there also as does our pope of here

En cest isle vient coursaus assez qui font champ, et vendent
To this isle come corsairs plenty who make camp and sell
leur gaaing que il ont robé; et le vendent moult bien; car li
their gain which they have robbed and it sell very well for the
crestien de cest isle les achatent, pour ce qu'il sevent bien
Christians of this isle them buy for this that-they know well
que c'est avoir de Sarrazins ou de ydolatre. Et sachiez qu'il
that it-is wealth of Saracens or of idolaters And know that-there
sont en ceste isle les meilleurs enchanteeurs du monde. Bien
are in this isle the best enchanters of-the world Well
est voir que l'arcevesque leur deffent en tant comme il puet;
is true that the-archbishop them forbids in so-much as he can
et bien est voir que il dient que leurs ancestres le furent;
and well is true that they say that their ancestors it were
si veulent aussi faire. Et vous dirai de leurs enchantemenz
so they-wish also to-do And to-you I-will-tell of their enchantments
aucune chose: que se une nef alast à voille, et eust bon
some thing that if a ship went under sail and had good

vent, et assez, il feroient faire un autre vent contraire à
wind and plenty they would-make make an other wind contrary to
la nef, et la feroient tourner arriere. Et si font venter
the ship and it would-make turn back And so they-make blow
lequel vent que il veulent; et font faire fortune grant,
whichever wind that they wish and make make storm great
et grans tempestes; et autres plus grans enchantemenz,
and great tempests and other more great enchantments
lesquiels ne sont pas bons à recorder en nostre livre.
which not are at-all good to record in our book

Autre chose n'y a qui à raconter face. Si irons
Other thing not-there is which to recount may-make So we-will-go
avant, et vous conterons d'une autre isle qui a nom
forward and to-you will-tell of-an other isle which has name
Madeisgascar.
Madagascar

Madagascar, a thousand miles south of Socotra, is ruled by four Saracen elders and has more elephants than any land, along with red sandalwood and ambergris from whales. The current runs so hard to the south that ships can go no farther than it and Zanzibar, reaching them in twenty days and needing three months to return. In the isles beyond appears the bird the islanders call Rukh, like an eagle but with a wingspan of thirty paces, which drops elephants from the sky to eat them; the Khan's envoys brought back boar tusks weighing fourteen pounds.

Cy dist de l'isle de Madeisgascar. 185

Here tells of the-isle of Madagascar

Madeisgascar est une isle qui est vers midi, loins de

Madagascar is an isle which is toward south far from

Scoira bien mille milles. Il sont touz Sarrazins qui aourent

Socotra fully thousand miles They are all Saracens who worship

Mahommet. Et si ont quatre vieillars qui dient qu'il

Mohammed And so they-have four old-men who say that-they

gouvernent ceste isle. Et sachiez que il est moult noble isle et

govern this isle And know that it is very noble isle and

beau et des greigneurs du monde; car il dure bien environ

fine and of-the greatest of-the world for it lasts fully about

.iiij.m. (quatre mille) milles. Il vivent de marchandises et

four-thousand four thousand miles They live from merchandises and

d'ars. Et si vous dis qu'il y a en cest isle plus d'olifans

from-crafts And so to-you I-tell that-it there is in this isle more of-elephants

que en nulle autre province du monde; et en une autre isle

than in any other province of-the world and in an other isle

aussi, ci avant, qui a nom Zanquibar, de quoi nous vous

also here forward which has name Zanzibar of which we to-you

dirons. Car en ces deux isles se fait si grant marchandises

will-tell For in these two isles itself makes so great merchandises

d'olifans que c'est merveille. Il ne menguent en cest isle
of-elephants that it-is marvel They not eat in this isle
nulle autre char que de chameus. Et si occient touz les jours
any other meat than of camels And so they-kill all the days
tant de ces chameus qu'il n'est nulz qui le peust croire qui
so-many of these camels that-it not-is anyone who it could believe who
ne le veist. Et dient que c'est la meilleur char et la plus
not it saw And they-say that it-is the best meat and the most
sainne du monde. Si que pour ce la menguent touzjours.
healthy of-the world So that for this it they-eat always

Il ont en ceste isle moult arbres de cendal vermeil qui
They have in this isle many trees of sandal red which
sont moult bons; et si en ont tant que touz leur
are very good and so thereof they-have so-many that all their
bois ne sont d'autre chose. Et si ont ambre assez, pour
woods not are of-other thing And so they-have ambergris plenty for
ce que il ont assez balainnes en celle mer, de quoi il
this that they have plenty whales in that sea of which they
prennent assez; et de capdos aussi, qui sont moult grans
take plenty and of cachalots also which are very great
poissons, qui ont aussi de l'ambre assez, si comme les
fishes which have also of the-ambergris plenty so as the
balainnes. Et si ont lupars et ours et lyons à grant
whales And so they-have leopards and bears and lions in great
foison; et autres bestes sauvages assez. Aussi y vient
plenty and other beasts wild plenty Also there comes
moult de marchans et grant navie dont il ont moult
many of merchants and great shipping from-which they have very
grant proufit. Et sachiez que ceste isle est tant vers midi,
great profit And know that this isle is so-far toward south
que les nefs ne pevent aler plus avant vers midi aus
that the ships not can go more forward toward south to-the

autres isles, qui y sont, fors à cestui, et un autre dont
other isles which there are except to this-one and an other of-which
nous vous dirons ci avant, qui a à nom Zamquibar. Et
we to-you will-tell here forward which has as name Zanzibar And
c'est pour ce que la courance de l'yaue court touzjours à
this-is for this that the current of the-water runs always to
midi si fort, que les nefs qui iroient ne pourroient puis
south so strongly that the ships which would-go not could afterward
arriere retourner. Et si vous di que les nefs de Maabar,
back return And so to-you I-tell that the ships of Maabar
qui viennent à ceste isle de Madeisgascar, et en l'autre de
which come to this isle of Madagascar and to the-other of
Zamquibar, y viennent si tost que c'est merveille; car il
Zanzibar there come so quickly that it-is marvel for they
viennent, si grant chemin comme il y a, en .xx. (vingt)
come so great road as it there is in twenty twenty
jours. Et quant il veulent retourner, si y painnent plus
days And when they wish to-return so there toil more
de trois mois. Et c'est pour l'yaue qui leur est contraire,
than three months And this-is for the-water which to-them is contrary
qui tant court fort à midi. Et c'est tousjours en toutes
which so-much runs strongly to south And this-is always in all
saisons que ceste yaue de la mer court à midi si fort
seasons that this water of the sea runs to south so strongly
que c'est merveilles. Et si dient que en ces autres isles
that it-is marvels And so they-say that in these other isles
qui sont à midi, que les nefs n'y peuvent aler, pour
which are to south where the ships not-there can go for
paour de non pooir retorner pour la courance de la mer;
fear of not being-able return for the current of the sea
que, là, treuvent l'en les oiseaux Grif qui y aperent en
that there finds one the birds Griffin which there appear in

certaines saisons de l'an. Mais il dient que il ont autre
certain seasons of the-year But they say that they have other
façon que nous ne disons. Et ceus qui ont esté là et
fashion than we — say And those who have been there and
les ont veus, conterent audit messire Marc Pol que il
them have seen told to-the-said my-lord Mark Pol that they
sont de tel façon comme l'aigle; mais il sont grant et
are of such fashion as the-eagle but they are great and
desmesuré; car il dient que leur esles cuevrent bien .xxx.
beyond-measure for they say that their wings cover fully thirty
(trente) pas, et que leur pennes cueuvrent, et sont longues
thirty paces and that their feathers cover and are long
bien .xij. (douze) pas. Et est si fort que il prent un olifans
fully twelve twelve paces And it-is so strong that it takes an elephant
à ses piés et le porte moult haut; et puis le laisse cheoir,
in its feet and it carries very high and then it lets fall
et ainsi le tue, et descent sus lui, et en menjue à sa
and thus it kills and descends upon it and thereof eats at its
voulenté. Et l'appellent, les genz de ces isles: Ruc; et n'a
will And it-call the people of these isles Rukh and not-has
autre nom. Pourquoi je ne say se il sont autres manières
other name Wherefore I not know if they are other manners
d'oiseaux aussi grans, ou se il sont les oiseaux Grif. Mais
of-birds also great or if they are the birds Griffin But
je vous di bien que il n'ont pas la forme faite de demi
I to-you tell well that they not-have at-all the form made of half
lyon comme nous disons, et demi oisiau. Mais moult sont
lion as we say and half bird But much they-are
de grant façon, et ressamblent à aigle tout droit.
of great fashion and resemble to eagle all straight

Le grant Kaan envoya en ces montaignes pour savoir de
The great Khan sent into these mountains for to-know of
ces diversités; si que ceus qui y alerent conterent ce. Et
these diversities so that those who there went told this And
si les y envoya aussi pour delivrer un sien message qu'il
so them there he-sent also for to-deliver a his envoy whom-he
y avoit pieça envoyé, et qu'il li avoient retenu;
there had long-since sent and whom-they from-him had detained
si que il le delivrerent et conterent au grant Kaan
so that they him delivered and told to-the great Khan
moult d'estranges choses; et de ces oiseaux aussi. Et si
many of-strange things and of these birds also And so
li aportèrent deux des dens de sengliers, dont chascune
to-him they-brought two of-the teeth of boars of-which each
estoit si grant qu'elle pesoit plus de .xiiij. (quatorze) livres;
was so great that-it weighed more than fourteen fourteen pounds
si que le senglier, qui avoit eu telz dens, avoit esté moult
so that the boar which had had such teeth had been very
grant et moult desmesuré. Car il distrent qu'il en y
great and very beyond-measure For they said that-it thereof there
avoit de si grans comme uns grant bugle. Il ont aussi
was of so great as a great buffalo They have also
girofles assez, et asnes sauvages. Et si ont tant de
giraffes plenty and asses wild And so they-have so-many of
bestes sauvages et si estranges à veoir que c'est merveilles.
beasts wild and so strange to see that it-is marvels

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si irons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So we-will-go
avant, et vous conterons de l'isle de Zanquibar.
forward and to-you will-tell of the-isle of Zanzibar

The people of Zanzibar are huge, black, and so ugly they seem devils; each carries the load of four men and eats for five. Elephants and lions abound, all the sheep are white with black heads, and the women have breasts four times as large as any others. They fight on camels and elephants carrying wooden castles, giving the elephants wine before battle. The book has told only the noblest of the 12,700 inhabited isles the mariners count. The greater India runs from Maabar to Kesmacoran, and the lesser from Champa to Mutfili.

186 Cy dit de l'isle de Zanquibar.

Here tells of the-isle of Zanzibar

Zanquibar est une grant isle et noble, et dure bien

Zanzibar is a great isle and noble and lasts fully

environ deux mille milles. Et si sont tuit ydolastre; et ont

about two thousand miles And so they-are all idolaters and have

royaume et langage par eus; et ne font treu à nullui. Les

kingdom and language by themselves and not make tribute to anyone The

gens sont grans et gros; mais ne sont pas si grans comme

people are great and thick but not are at-all so tall as

il sont gros. Car je vous di qu'il sont si grans qu'il

they are thick For I to-you tell that-they are so great that-they

ressemblent jayans; et sont si fort que l'un porte bien la

resemble giants and are so strong that the-one carries well the

charge de quatre autres hommes et menguent bien autant

load of four other men and eat well as-much

que cinq autres hommes. Et si sont touz noirs; et vont touz

as five other men And so they-are all black and go all

nus, fors de leur nature que il cuevrent. Il ont les cheveus

naked except of their nature which they cover They have the hairs

crespés et noirs si comme poivre. Et si ont si grans

curly and black so as pepper And so they-have so great

bouches, et le nez si rebiffé et les levres si grosses, et les
mouths and the nose so turned-up and the lips so thick and the
iex si grans et si esroilliez, et si rouges, que il samblent
eyes so great and so staring and so red that they seem
tuit dyables; et sont si hideus et si laiz, que il semblent
all devils and are so hideous and so ugly that they seem
la plus horible chose du monde à veoir. Il y naist moult
the most horrible thing of-the world to see It there is-born many
d'olifans et tant que c'est merveille à veoir, tant en y
of-elephants and so-many that it-is marvel to see so-many thereof there
a. Il ont lyons touz noirs d'autre façon que les nostres. Et
are They have lions all black of-other fashion than the ours And
si ont ours et lupars assez. Et si vous di que touz leurs
so they-have bears and leopards plenty And so to-you I-tell that all their
moutons et leurs brebis sont touz d'une couleur; car il sont
sheep and their ewes are all of-one color for they are
touz blans et ont les chiefs noirs. Et n'y en treuve
all white and have the heads black And not-there of-them finds
l'en nul d'autre maniere; bien le sachiez pour certain. Il
one any of-other manner well it know for certain They
ont aussi moult de girofles, qui moult sont belles à veoir.
have also many of giraffes which very are fine to see

Une chose vous dirai des olifans. Sachiez quant le masle
One thing to-you I-will-tell of-the elephants Know when the male
veult gesir à la femelle, si font une grant fosse en
wishes to-lie with the female so they-make a great pit in
terre; et se met l'olifante enverse dedens celle fosse, et
earth and herself puts the-she-elephant on-her-back within that pit and
l'olifant monte dessus, si comme fait l'homme à la femme.
the-elephant mounts above so as does the-man to the woman
Et c'est pour ce qu'elle a nature moult envers le ventre.
And this-is for this that-she has nature much toward the belly

Les femmes de cest isle sont les plus laides du monde, et
The women of this isle are the most ugly of-the world and
si ont quatre tans les mamelles plus grandes et plus grosses
so have four times the breasts more great and more thick
que nul autre femme. Il vivent de ris et de char et de
than any other woman They live from rice and from meat and from
lait, et de dathes. Et font vin de dathes, et de ris, et de
milk and from dates And they-make wine of dates and of rice and of
espice moult bonne, et de sucre aussi. Il s'y fait moult
spice very good and of sugar also It itself-there makes very
grant marchandise, et y vient moult de marchans et grant
great merchandise and there comes many of merchants and great
navie. Mais le plus grant fait de marchandise de celle isle, si
shipping But the most great deed of merchandise of that isle so
est des dens d'olifans, dont il ont à grant planté; et si
is of-the teeth of-elephants of-which they have in great plenty and so
ont aussi ambre assez pour ce qu'il ont moult balaines.
they-have also ambergris plenty for this that-they have many whales
Et sachiez qu'ils ont moult bons combateurs et vaillans en
And know that-they have very good fighters and valiant in
bataille; et doutent pou la mort. Ne n'ont nulz chevaus,
battle and fear little the death Nor not-they-have any horses
mais combatent sus chameus et sus olifans. Et font
but fight upon camels and upon elephants And they-make
dessus chasteaux de fust, où il a bien .x. (dix) ou .xvj.
above castles of wood where it there-is fully ten ten or sixteen
(seize) personnes atout lances et espées et pierres; si que
sixteen persons with-all lances and swords and stones so that
ceux qui sont dessus les olifans font moult grant bataille,
those who are above the elephants make very great battle
qui sont es chasteaux de fust. Il n'ont nul armeure, mais
who are in-the castles of wood They not-have any armor but

escu du cuir, et lances et espées; si que il s'entr'occient à
shield of leather and lances and swords so that they each-other-kill to
merveilles. Et quant il veulent mener l'olifant en bataille, si
marvels And when they wish to-lead the-elephant into battle so
leur donnent de leur vin assez à boire; si que il sont demi
to-them they-give of their wine plenty to drink so that they are half
yvre. Et ce font il, que quant il a beu, si devient plus
drunk And this do they for when it has drunk so it-becomes more
fier et plus orgueilleus et en vaut mieux en la bataille.
fierce and more proud and thereof is-worth better in the battle

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si vous
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So to-you
dirons ci avant de la grant province de Abbasie, qui est
we-will-tell here forward of the great province of Abash which is
la médienne Ynde, si comme vous pourrez oïr et entendre,
the middle India so as you will-be-able hear and understand
et du fait d'Inde. Et sachiez tout vraiement que nous
and of-the matter of-India And know all truly that we
ne vous avons conté des isles, mais que des plus nobles
not to-you have told of-the isles but that of-the most noble
provinces et royaumes aussi qui y sont. Car il n'a
provinces and kingdoms also which there are For it not-there-is
homme au monde qui de toutes les isles d'Inde peust
man in-the world who of all the isles of-India could
conter ne dire la verité. Mais je vous ai conté de toutes
tell nor say the truth But I to-you have told of all
les meilleurs choses et la flour. Car grant partie de toutes
the best things and the flower For great part of all
les autres isles dont je vous ai fait mention, sous cestes,
the other isles of-which I to-you have made mention under these
sont dont je vous ai conté. Et si vous di que, selonc
are of-which I to-you have told And so to-you I-tell that according-to

le compas des bons mariniers de celle grant mer xij. m.
the compass of-the good mariners of that great sea twelve thousand
et .vij. cenz (12,700) isles, qui se scevent, sans ceus
and seven hundred 12,700 isles which themselves know without those
que l'en ne scet pas, là où l'en ne puet aler; lesquelles
which one not knows at-all there where one not can go which
isles douze mille et sept cens sont toutes habitées; et
isles twelve thousand and seven hundred are all inhabited and
est moult grant merveille. Car il y a de si grans et de
it-is very great marvel For it there is of so great and of
si desmesurées isles comme vous avez ouy. Et ce content,
so beyond-measure isles as you have heard And this tell
de certain, touz les mariniers de celle mer; et il le scevent
for certain all the mariners of that sea and they it know
bien pour ce que touz les jours il ne font que nagier.
well for this that all the days they not do but sail

L'Inde greigneur, si est de Maabar jusques à Quesivecoran.
The-India greater so is from Maabar as-far-as to Kesmacoran
Et y a .xiij. (treize) moult tres grans royaumes. Et
And there are thirteen thirteen very very great kingdoms And
nous avons conté de .x. (dix); si que des .iij. (trois) nous
we have told of ten ten so that of-the three three we
passerons brievement; et sont de la terre ferme. Et Inde
will-pass briefly and they-are of the land firm And India
menour, si est de la province de Cyamba jusques à Mutfili,
lesser so is from the province of Champa as-far-as to Mutfili
qui a .viij. (huit) grans royaumes; et est de la terre
which has eight eight great kingdoms and is of the land
ferme. Et entendez que ces royaumes sont touz de la terre
firm And understand that these kingdoms are all of the land

ferme; car ceus des isles sont en grant quantité, si comme
firm for those of-the isles are in great quantity so as
je vous ai dit; lesquielz ne sont pas en ce nombre.
I to-you have said which not are at-all in this number

XXXVII · ABASH AND THE KING'S REVENGE ON ADEN

Abash, the middle India, has six kings, three Christian and three Saracen, under a Christian overlord, and its Christians bear three marks on the face from baptism. In 1288 its king sent a bishop to Jerusalem in his place; returning by Aden, the bishop refused to turn Saracen, and the sultan had him circumcised in contempt of his king. The king swore to wear no crown until avenged, invaded Aden with horse, foot, and castled elephants, beat the sultan at a strong pass, wasted the kingdom for a month, and went home avenged. Abash lives on meat, rice, milk, and sesame, and has giraffes, ostriches, and parrots.

Cy commence de la grant province de Abbasie, qui est la 187
Here begins of the great province of Abash which is the
moienne Inde, et est aussi de la terre ferme.
middle India and is also of the land firm

Abbasie est une grant province, et sachiez qu'elle est la
Abash is a great province and know that-it is the
moienne Inde; et est de la terre ferme. Si y a six roys
middle India and is of the land firm So there are six kings
et six royaumes moult grans, desquelx six roys sont, les trois
and six kingdoms very great of-which six kings are the three
crestiens, et les trois sarrazins; et le greigneur des six, si
Christians and the three Saracens and the greatest of-the six so
est crestien; car touz les autres sont soubmis à lui. Et les
is Christian for all the others are subject to him And the
crestiens si ont trois signes enmi le vis: l'un du front
Christians so have three signes amid the face the-one from-the forehead

jusques enmi le nez, et les autres deux es joes. Et les
as-far-as amid the nose and the other two on-the cheeks And them
font d'un baptesme; car puis qu'il sont baptisiez en l'eaue
they-make of-a baptism for after that-they are baptized in the-water
si se font les trois signaus, et ce est par gentillesse
so themselves they-make the three signs and this is by gentility
et pour accomplir leur baptesme. Et si y a aussi juifs
and for to-accomplish their baptism And so there are also Jews
et ont deux signaus en chascune joe; et les sarrasins
and they-have two signs on each cheek and the Saracens
en ont seulement un ou front, jusques à demi le nez.
thereof have only one on-the forehead as-far-as to half the nose

Le grant roy demeure ou milieu de la province; les
The great king dwells in-the middle of the province the
sarrazins demeurent vers Aden. En ceste province preescha
Saracens dwell toward Aden In this province preached
saint Thomas l'apostre; et puis qu'il les ot convertis, si
saint Thomas the-apostle and after that-he them had converted so
s'en ala en la province de Maabar là où il morut.
himself-thence he-went into the province of Maabar there where he died
Et si est aussi là son corps, si comme je vous ait dit ci
And so is also there his body so as I to-you have said here
arrieres. Et sachiez que il sont moult bonnes genz d'armes;
back And know that they are very good people of-arms
et si sont genz à cheval; car il ont chevaus assez; et il
and so they-are people on horse for they have horses plenty and it
leur est bien mestier, car toute jour ont il guerre contre
to-them is well needful for all day have they war against
le soudan d'Aden et contre ceus de Nubie; et contre autres
the sultan of-Aden and against those of Nubia and against other

genz assez. Et si vous conterai d'une belle histoire qui avint
people plenty And so to-you I-will-tell of-a fine story which happened
ou temps m.cc.iiij.xx. et .viij. (1288) de Crist.
in-the time a-thousand-two-hundred-four-score and eight 1288 of Christ
Il fu voir que cestui roy qui fu crestien et sires de la
It was true that this king who was Christian and lord of the
province de Abbasie dist qu'il vouloit aler en pelerinage en
province of Abash said that-he wished to-go on pilgrimage to
Jheruslim pour aourer le saint sepulcre nostre Seigneur dieu
Jerusalem for to-worship the holy sepulcher (of-)our Lord God
Jhesu Crist le sauveeur. Et ses barons li distrent que
Jesus Christ the savior And his barons to-him said that
trop seroit grant peril s'il y aloit; et li loeroient qu'il
too would-be great peril if-he there went and to-him would-advise that-he
y envoiast en son lieu aucun evesque ou aucun prélat. Si
there should-send in his place some bishop or some prelate So
s'accorda li roys à ce que ses barons li conseilloient; et
himself-agreed the king to this which his barons to-him counseled and
lors y envoya un sien evesque qui moult estoit de sainte
then there he-sent a his bishop who very was of holy
vie. Si ala tant, celui evesque, et par mer et par terre que il
life So went so-far that bishop both by sea and by land that he
vint au saint sepulcre. Et si li fist telle honneur comme
came to-the holy sepulcher And so to-it he-did such honor as
crestien li doit faire. Et si y fit moult grant offrande
Christian to-it ought do And so there he-made very great offering
de par son roy qui li avoit envoyé en son lieu. Et quand
from by his king who him had sent in his place And when
il ot fait tout ce qu'il devoit faire, si s'en parti; et
he had done all that which-he ought do so himself-thence he-departed and
fist tant par ses journées que il fu en Aden. Et sachiez que
did so-much by his day-journeys that he was in Aden And know that

en cest royaume sont moult haïs li crestien; car il sont touz
in this kingdom are much hated the Christians for they are all
sarrazins leurs ennemis mortelz. Et quant li soudan d'Aden
Saracens their enemies mortal And when the sultan of-Aden
sot que celui estoit evesque et crestien et message au
knew that he was bishop and Christian and envoy of-the
grant roy d'Abbasie, si le fist prendre et li demanda se il
great king of-Abash so him he-had taken and him asked if he
estoit crestien; et li evesques respondi que voirement estoit
was Christian and the bishop answered that truly was
il crestien. Et li soudan li dist que il retournast à la
he Christian And the sultan to-him said that he should-return to the
foy de Mahommet, ou se ce non, il li feroit faire grant
faith of Mohammed or if this not he to-him would-have done great
honte et grant vergoigne. Et li evesques li respondi que,
shame and great disgrace And the bishop to-him answered that
avant, se laisseroit il occire, que il reniast son créateur.
rather himself would-let he kill than he should-deny his creator

Quant le soudan l'oy, si l'ot à grant despit, et
When the sultan it-heard so it-he-had for great spite and
commanda que il fust tailliez. Si fu pris et retailliez
commanded that he were circumcised So he-was taken and circumcised
si comme font li Sarrazin. Et quant il orent ce fait,
so as do the Saracens And when they had this done
si li dist, le soudan, que il li avoit faite celle honte
so to-him said the sultan that he to-him had done that shame
pour despit de son roy; et le laissa aler.
for spite of his king and him let go

Li evesques ot moult grant dueil en son cueur pour
The bishop had very great grief in his heart for
celle honte qui li avoit esté faite. Mais il se confortoit
that shame which to-him had been done But he himself comforted

en son cueur pour ce qu'il l'avoit reçeue pour soustenir la
in his heart for this that-he it-had received for to-uphold the
loy de nostre seigneur Dieu Jhesu Crist; et que il aura
law of our lord God Jesus Christ and that he will-have
bonne merite à l'ame.
good merit for the-soul

Et quant il fu garis si s'en parti, et ala tant
And when he was cured so himself-thence he-departed and went so-far
par terre et par mer que il vint au roy son signeur en
by land and by sea that he came to-the king his lord in
Abbasie. Et quant le roy le vit, si li fit moult grant
Abash And when the king him saw so to-him he-made very great
joie et à moult grant feste le reçut. Et si li demanda
joy and with very great feast him received And so of-him he-asked
du saint sepulcre, et, il, li conta toute la verité, si que
of-the holy sepulcher and he to-him told all the truth so that
le roy le tint à moult saintisme et ot bonne foy. Et
the king him held for very holy and had good faith And
quant l'evesque li ot tout conté le fait de Jheruslim si
when the-bishop to-him had all told the matter of Jerusalem so
li conta puis toute la honte que le soudan d'Aden li
to-him he-told then all the shame which the sultan of-Aden to-him
avoit faite en despit de lui. Si ot moult grant ire et
had done in spite of him So he-had very great anger and
moult grant douleur; et fu si courrouciez que à pou qu'il
very great sorrow and was so angered that at little that-he
ne mouroit de dueil et d'angoisse. Et parla au chief de
— *died of grief and of-anguish And he-spoke at-the end of*
piece si haut que touz ceus qui furent entour le porent
while so loud that all those who were around him could
bien oïr et entendre. Et dist que jamais ne porteroit
well hear and understand And he-said that ever-more not he-would-wear

couronne ne ne tendroit terre, s'il ne prent si grant venjance
crown nor not would-hold land if-he not takes so great vengeance
du soudan d'Aden, que tout le monde en puisse parler,
on-the sultan of-Aden that all the world thereof may speak
affin que sa honte puisse estre bien et hautement vengiée.
to-the-end that his shame may be well and highly avenged
Et que vous en diroie je? Il fist de maintenant
And what you thereof would-tell I He had from at-once
appareillier tout son ost de chevaliers et de genz à pié.
made-ready all his host of knights and of people on foot
Si renvoya aussi grant quantité d'olifans enchastellés avec
So he-sent also great quantity of-elephants castled with
lui. Et quant il fu bien appareilliez, si se mist à la
him And when he was well made-ready so himself he-put to the
voie atout son ost, et tant cheminerent que il entrerent
way with-all his host and so-far they-traveled that they entered
ou royaume d'Aden atout moult grant gent d'armes. Le
into-the kingdom of-Aden with-all very great people of-arms The
soudan qui bien avoit sceu que ce roy venoit sus lui, si
sultan who well had known that this king came upon him so
li ala à l'encontre, au fort pas de son royaume, atout
to-him went to the-encounter at-the strong pass of his kingdom with-all
moult grans genz d'armes pour deffendre sa terre que ses
very great people of-arms for to-defend his land that his
ennemis n'y entrassent. Li roys vint avec ses gens au
enemies not-there should-enter The king came with his people to-the
fort pas là où les Sarrazins estoient. Si commença la
strong pass there where the Saracens were So began the
bataille aspre et dure et fort, et d'une part et d'autre;
battle harsh and hard and strong both on-one part and on-other
et moult estoient crueus li uns sus l'autre. Mais il avint
and very they-were cruel the ones upon the-other But it happened

par la volenté de nostre seigneur Dieu Jhesu Crist que
by the will of our lord God Jesus Christ that
les Sarrazins ne porent durer contre les Crestiens, pour
the Saracens not could endure against the Christians for
ce qu'il ne sont pas si bonnes gens d'armes comme les
this that-they not are at-all so good people of-arms as the
Crestiens. Si furent li Sarrazin desconfit; et en y ot
Christians So were the Saracens defeated and thereof there were
tant mors que ce fu merveilles. Et entra le roy d'Abbasie
so-many dead that it was marvels And entered the king of-Abash
ou royaume d'Aden atout son ost. Et pluseurs fois leur
into-the kingdom of-Aden with-all his host And several times to-them
venoient, les Sarrazins, à l'encontre aus estrois pas; mais
came the Saracens to the-encounter at-the narrow passes but
il ne leur valoit neant; car toutes fois estoient mors et
it not to-them availed anything for all times they-were dead and
desconfiz. Et quant le roy ot moult gasté et destruit du
defeated And when the king had much wasted and destroyed of-the
royaume de ses ennemis et demouré atout son ost, dedens
kingdom of his enemies and stayed with-all his host within
le royaume, plus d'un mois, toutes fois occiant les Sarrazins,
the kingdom more than-a month all times killing the Saracens
et destruiant leur terre (si que il en occist moult grant
and destroying their land so that he thereof killed very great
quantité), et que sa honte fu bien vengiée, si pensa
quantity and that his shame was well avenged so he-thought
de retourner en son royaume; car il retournoit à grant
of returning into his kingdom for he returned with great
honneur; car il n'y povoit plus demourer et veoit que il
honor for he not-there could more stay and saw that he
ne povoit plus domagier ses ennemis, pour ce qu'il avoit de
not could more damage his enemies for this that-he had of

trop fors pas encore à passer; et que pou de gent li
very strong passes still to pass and that few of people to-him
feroient grant domage aus estroiz pas. Si s'en parti
would-do great damage at-the narrow passes So himself-thence he-departed
du royaume d'Aden de ses ennemis, et se mist à la
from-the kingdom of-Aden of his enemies and himself put to the
voie. Et tant alerent que il retournerent en leur pays à
way And so-far they-went that they returned into their country with
grant honneur et à grant joie; car il avoit bien vengié sa
great honor and with great joy for he had well avenged his
honte et celle de son evesque qui l'avoit receue pour lui;
shame and that of his bishop who it-had received for him
car il occistrent tant de Sarrazins et gasterent leur terre,
for they killed so-many of Saracens and wasted their land
et destruirent tant que ce fu une tres grant merveille;
and destroyed so-much that it was a very great marvel
et ce fu bien employé. Car ce n'est pas digne chose que
and this was well employed For it not-is at-all worthy thing that
les Sarrasins contrestent contre les Crestiens qui sont bons.
the Saracens contend against the Christians who are good

Or vous ai de ce bien conté. Si vous dirai encore de
Now to-you I-have of this well told So to-you I-will-tell further of
ceste province meismes. Elle est moult planteureuse de toutes
this province same It is very plentiful of all
choses de vivres; et vivent de char et de ris et de
things of victuals and they-live from meat and from rice and from
lait et de suceman. Il ont olifans assez, non pas qu'il
milk and from sesame They have elephants plenty not at-all that-they
naissent en leur contrée, mais leur viennent des isles
are-born in their country but to-them come from-the isles
de l'autre Inde. Mais bien ont girofles assez qui naissent
of the-other India But well they-have giraffes plenty which are-born

en leur pays. Et si ont ours, lupars et lyons assez, et
in their country And so they-have bears leopards and lions plenty and
maintes autres bestes moult estranges. Et si ont asnes
many other beasts very strange And so they-have asses
sauvages assez; et si ont gelines les plus belles du monde
wild plenty and so have hens the most fine of-the world
à veoir, et maintes autres manieres d'oiseaux. Et si ont
to see and many other manners of-birds And so they-have
ostruces assez qui sont un pou mendre d'un asne. Et si
ostriches plenty which are a little smaller than-an ass And so
ont assez papegaus moult beaux, et singes et mennons
they-have plenty parrots very fine and apes and monkeys
moult estranges assez. Il y a cités et chasteaux assez en
very strange plenty It there is cities and castles plenty in
ceste province de Abbascie. Et si y a moult de marchans;
this province of Abash And so there are many of merchants
car il s'y fait moult grant marchandise. Et si y fait
for it itself-there makes very great merchandise And so there makes
on moult beaux bouguerans et autres draps de coton.
one very fine buckrams and other cloths of cotton

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si irons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So we-will-go
avant et vous conterons de la province d'Aden.
forward and to-you will-tell of the province of-Aden

The Saracen sultan of Aden grows rich on the dues of the Indian ships at his port, whose spices go by camel and by the Nile to Alexandria, and on Arabian chargers sold to India for a hundred marks apiece; when the sultan of Babylon took Acre he sent him thirty thousand horsemen and forty thousand camels, more from hatred of the Christians than love of his ally. Esher, four hundred miles northwest and under Aden, has white incense that its lord buys at ten pounds of gold a hundredweight and sells at sixty. No grass grows there, so sheep, oxen, nags, and camels all live on small fish, dried for the year, and its sheep have small horns in place of ears.

188 Cy dit de la province d'Aden.
Here tells of the province of-Aden

Sachiez que en ceste province d'Aden a un seigneur
Know that in this province of-Aden there-is a lord
qui s'appelle soudan. Il sont tuit sarrazins et aourent
who himself-calls sultan They are all Saracens and worship
Mahommet, et heent moult les crestiens. Et si y a
Mohammed and hate much the Christians And so there are
maintes cités et mains chasteaux. En cest Aden est le
many cities and many castles In this Aden is the
port là où il vient moult de nefs d'Inde, atoute leur
port there where it comes many of ships of-India with-all their
marchandise. Et de cest port la portent, li marchant, bien
merchandise And from this port it carry the merchants fully
.vij. (sept) journées, atout petites nefs. Et, au chief de ces
seven seven day-journeys with-all little ships And at-the end of these
sept journées, descendent la marchandise et la chargent sus
seven day-journeys they-unload the merchandise and it load upon
chameus et vont par terre bien .xxx. (trente) journées. Et
camels and go by land fully thirty thirty day-journeys And
puis treuvent le flun d'Alixandre; si que par ce flun vont
then they-find the river of-Alexandria so that by this river they-go

en Alixandre. Si que par cette voie d'Aden ont, les Sarrazins
to Alexandria So that by this way of-Aden have the Saracens
d'Alixandre, toute l'espicerie et le poivre que il ont. Car
of-Alexandria all the-spicery and the pepper which they have For
par autre voie si bonne, ne si cointe ne la pevent il avoir
by other way so good nor so convenient not it can they have
en Alixandre. Et sachiez que le soudan d'Aden en a moult
in Alexandria And know that the sultan of-Aden thereof has very
grant droit et grans treus des nefs qui vont et viennent
great due and great tributes from-the ships which go and come
d'Inde en sa terre, atout toutes manieres de marchandises.
from-India into his land with-all all manners of merchandises
Et d'autre part aussi; car il va du port d'Aden en Inde
And on-other part also for there goes from-the port of-Aden into India
moult grant quantité de bons destriers arrabins et chevaus
very great quantity of good chargers Arabian and horses
et grans roncins de .ij. (deux) selles. Car ceus qui les
and great nags of two two saddles For those who them
mainnent en Inde en font moult grant gaaing, pour ce que
lead into India thereof make very great gain for this that
les chevaus sont moult chiers en Inde; si comme autre fois
the horses are very dear in India so as other time
vous ai dit, car ceus d'Inde n'en ont nul. Et si vendent
to-you I-have said for those of-India not-thereof have any And so they-sell
bien un destrier .c. (cens) mars d'argent et plus. Si que
well a charger a-hundred hundred marks of-silver and more So that
ce soudan d'Aden en a si grant droit, de ce qui se
this sultan of-Aden thereof has so great due from that which itself
charge à son port, qu'il dist qu'il est un des plus riches
loads at his port that-he says that-he is one of-the most rich
seigneurs du monde. Et si vous di que quant le soudan de
lords of-the world And so to-you I-tell that when the sultan of

Babiloinne ala sus la cité d'Acre, et la print, il envoya en
Babylon went upon the city of-Acre and it took he sent in
aide .xxx. (trente) mille hommes à cheval, et bien quarante
aid thirty thirty thousand men on horse and fully forty
mille chameus, si que ce fu proufit aus sarrazins, et tres
thousand camels so that this was profit to-the Saracens and very
grant domage et grief aus crestiens. Et ce fist il plus pour
great damage and grief to-the Christians And this did he more for
la hainne qu'il a aus crestiens, que pour amour qu'il
the hatred which-he has for-the Christians than for love which-he
eust au soudan de Babiloinne; car il s'entreheent moult.
had for-the sultan of Babylon for they each-other-hate much

Or vous lairons de ce soudan d'Aden; et vous
Now you we-will-leave of this sultan of-Aden and to-you
conterons d'une cité qui est souzmise à Aden meismes;
will-tell of-a city which is subject to Aden same
et a nom Escier; et y a un roy, et est vers maistre,
and has name Esher and there is a king and it-is toward northwest
si comme vous pourrez entendre.
so as you will-be-able understand

189 Cy dit de la cité d'Escier.
Here tells of the city of-Esher

Escier est une cité moult grant qui est vers maistre.
Esher is a city very great which is toward northwest
Et est loins du port d'Aden quatre cens milles. Et
And it-is far from-the port of-Aden four hundred miles And
si y a un roy qui est souzmis au soudan d'Aden. Il
so there is a king who is subject to-the sultan of-Aden He
maintient bien sa terre en justice; et si y a pluseurs
maintains well his land in justice and so there are several
cités et chasteaus souz lui. Il sont sarrazins; et si y a
cities and castles under him They are Saracens and so there is

moult bon port; si que moult de nefs y viennent d'Inde
very good port so that many of ships there come from-India
avec moult de marchandises. En ceste contrée croist moult
with many of merchandises In this country grows much
d'encens blanc de quoi le seigneur a moult grant proufit.
of-incense white from which the lord has very great profit
Et ne l'ose l'en à autre vendre qu'au seigneur; et le
And not it-dares one to other sell than-to-the lord and it
prent pour .x. (dix) livres d'or le quintau et le vent .lx.
he-takes for ten ten pounds of-gold the hundredweight and it sells sixty
(soixante) livres d'or le quintau aus marchans; si qu'il
sixty pounds of-gold the hundredweight to-the merchants so that-he
y gaaingne moult grant avoir. Il y croist aussi moult de
there gains very great wealth It there grows also many of
dathes. Il n'ont nulz blez que ris seulement; et si en
dates They not-have any grains but rice only and so thereof
ont pou; mais il leur en vient assez de toutes pars;
they-have little but it to-them thereof comes plenty from all parts
pour ce que ceus qui leur portent y gaaingnent bien.
for this that those who to-them carry there gain well
Il ont poisson en grant habondance, et proprement moult
They have fish in great abundance and especially very
grant. Et si en ont tant que pour un venissien gros
great And so thereof they-have so-much that for a Venetian groat
d'argent en auroit l'en .ij. bien grans. Il vivent de
of-silver thereof would-have one two very great They live from
char, et de lait, et de ris, et de poisson. Il n'ont
meat and from milk and from rice and from fish They not-have
point de vin de vingne; mais il en font de sucre, et
whit of wine of vine but they thereof make of sugar and
de ris, et de dathes bon et fin. Et si vous dirai encore
of rice and of dates good and fine And so to-you I-will-tell further

une autre chose qui bien semble estrange. Sachiez que touz
an other thing which well seems strange Know that all
leur moutons n'ont nulles oreilles; mais là où l'oreille
their sheep not-have any ears but there where the-ear
doit estre, a un petit cornet. Et sont petites bestes
must be there-is a little horn And they-are little beasts
et belles. Et encore vous di que toutes leurs bestes, si
and fine And further to-you I-tell that all their beasts so
sont roncins, buefs, chameus; touz menguent petiz poissons,
are nags oxen camels all eat little fishes
et ne vivent d'autre chose; car ce est toute leur viande;
and not live from-other thing for this is all their food
et est pour ce que, en tout ce pays, n'a herbe ne
and it-is for this that in all this country not-there-is grass nor
verdure, ains est le plus sec lieu du monde. Les poissons
greenery but it-is the most dry place of-the world The fishes
que les bestes menjuent sont moult petiz, et les prent l'en
which the beasts eat are very little and them takes one
de mars, et d'avril et de may. Et en prennent tant
in March and in-April and in May And thereof they-take so-many
que c'est merveilles. Et puis les sechent et les metent en
that it-is marvels And then them they-dry and them put in
maisons et les donnent à mengier à leurs bestes tout l'an.
houses and them give to eat to their beasts all the-year
Et encore les menguent, les bestes, aux poissonniers, tout
And further them eat the beasts from-the fishermen all
vifs, si comme il issent de l'yaue. Il ont aussi moult
alive so as they issue from the-water They have also many
d'autres poissons grans et bons et à grant marchié; car
of-other fishes great and good and at great market for

il les taillent par pieces, et les font séchier au souleil
they them cut in pieces and them make dry in-the sun
en maisons; et les menguent tout l'an si comme bescuit.
in houses and them eat all the-year so as biscuit
Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si vous
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So to-you
conterons ci avant d'une autre cité qui a nom Dufar;
we-will-tell here forward of-an other city which has name Dhofar
si comme vous pourrez ouïr.
so as you will-be-able hear

XXXIX · DHOFAR, KALHAT, AND HORMUZ

Dhofar, five hundred miles northwest of Esher and under Aden, ships Arabian chargers to India and gathers white incense from small fir-like trees cut with a knife. Kalhat, under Hormuz, commands the mouth of its gulf, and the Melik of Hormuz retreats there when he fears the sultan of Kerman, closing the gulf to ships until the sultan does his will. Hormuz is so hot that its houses have wind catchers. The book passes over Kish to return to the great Turkey.

Cy devise de la cité de Dufar. 190
Here describes of the city of Dhofar
Dufar si est une belle cité et noble et grant; et est loins
Dhofar so is a fine city and noble and great and is far
de Escier .v. (cinq) cens .m. (milles) vers maistre. Et sont
from Esher five five hundred miles miles toward northwest And they-are
sarrazins; et ont un seigneur si comme je vous dirai. Et est
Saracens and have a lord so as I to-you will-tell And it-is
souzmis au soudan d'Aden. La cité si est sus la mer; et
subject to-the sultan of-Aden The city so is upon the sea and
y a moult bon port. Si qu'il y va et vient d'Inde moult
there is very good port So that-it there goes and comes from-India very

grant quantité de navie. Et y amainnent, les marchans,
great quantity of shipping And there bring the merchants
quantité de destriers arrabis, en Ynde; de quoy il font moult
quantity of chargers Arabian into India from which they make very
grant gaaing. Ceste cité si a souz soi maintes autres cités et
great gain This city so has under itself many other cities and
chasteaux. Et si y a moult d'encens blanc; et vous dirai
castles And so there is much of-incense white and to-you I-will-tell
comment il croist. Il y a arbres ainsi comme sapins petiz,
how it grows It there is trees thus as firs little
et les encisent d'un coustel en pluseurs lieus; si que par celle
and them cut with-a knife in several places so that by that
enciseure giettent l'encens. Et il ist aussi sans enciseure;
cut they-throw the-incense And it issues also without cut
et est pour la grant chaleur du soleil qu'il y fait.
and it-is for the great heat of-the sun which-it there makes

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si nous
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So we
partirons de ci et irons avant, et vous conterons du
will-depart from here and will-go forward and to-you will-tell of-the
golf de Calatu et de la cité de Calatu aussi.
gulf of Kalhat and of the city of Kalhat also

191 Cy dit du golf de Calatu, et de la cité aussi de Calatu.
Here tells of-the gulf of Kalhat and of the city also of Kalhat

Calatu est une grant cité qui est dedens un golf, qui est
Kalhat is a great city which is within a gulf which is
appellez le golf de Calatu. Et est loin de Dufar .vi. (six)
called the gulf of Kalhat And it-is far from Dhofar six six
cens milles vers maistre. Elle est sus la mer, et si est
hundred miles toward northwest It is upon the sea and so is
noble cité. Et sont Sarrazins; et si sont souz Hormes. Et
noble city And they-are Saracens and so they-are under Hormuz And

toutes fois que le Melik de Hormes a guerre contre autre
all times that the Melik of Hormuz has war against other
plus puissant de lui; si s'en vient à ceste cité de Calatu
more powerful than him so himself-thence he-comes to this city of Kalhat
pour ce qu'elle est moult fort, et en fort lieu. Il n'ont
for this that-it is very strong and in strong place They not-have
nulz blez, mais les ont d'autre part; car les marchans leur
any grains but them have from-other part for the merchants to-them
aportent atoutes leurs nefs. Et si y a moult grant port
bring with-all their ships And so there is very great port
et moult bon. Et si y vient aussi moult de marchandise
and very good And so there comes also much of merchandise
d'Inde atout les nefs; car de ceste cité s'espant puis en
of-India with-all the ships for from this city itself-spreads then into
pluseurs cités et chasteaux. Et porte l'en aussi de ce port
several cities and castles And carries one also from this port
moult de bons destriers arrabis en Ynde. Et sachiez que de
many of good chargers Arabian into India And know that from
ceste cité et des autres, si comme je vous ai conté, va,
this city and from-the others so as I to-you have told goes
chascun an, si grant quantité de chevaus par les isles, que
each year so great quantity of horses through the isles that
c'est merveilles; et c'est pour ce que il n'y en naist nul.
it-is marvels and it-is for this that it not-there thereof is-born any
Et d'autre part, quant il sont là venu il y muerent
And on-other part when they are there come they there die
tantost, pour la male garde; car il ne les sevent garder;
at-once for the bad keeping for they not them know keep
et leur donnent à mengier viandes cuites et toutes autres
and to-them give to eat foods cooked and all other

choses, si comme je vous ai autrefois conté ci arrieres
things so as I to-you have another-time told here back
appertement; et si n'ont aussi nul mareschal de chevaus.
openly and so not-they-have also any farrier of horses
Ceste cité de Calatu siet sus la bouche d'un golf; si
This city of Kalhat sits upon the mouth of-a gulf so
que nulle nef n'y puet entrer ne issir, sans leur volenté.
that any ship not-there can enter nor issue without their will
Et quant le Melic des Hormes qui est aussi le Melic de
And when the Melik of-the Hormuz who is also the Melik of
Calatu, lequel est souz le soudan de Querman, a paour de
Kalhat which is under the sultan of Kerman has fear of
son seigneur le soudan de Querman, si entre es nefs des
his lord the sultan of Kerman so he-enters into-the ships of-the
Hormes, et s'en vient à Calatu, et ne laisse passer nulle
Hormuz and himself-thence comes to Kalhat and not lets pass any
nef au golf; si que le soudan de Querman en a trop grant
ship at-the gulf so that the sultan of Kerman thereof has very great
domage, pour ce qu'il pert le droit des marchans qui venoient
damage for this that-he loses the due of-the merchants who came
en sa terre, d'Inde et d'autre part, car il y en vient moult
into his land from-India and from-other part for it there thereof comes very
grant quantité de navie atout leur marchandises; de quoi il
great quantity of shipping with-all their merchandises from which he
reçoit moult grans droiz; si li que à force li convient faire
receives very great dues so him that by force to-him it-behooves do
ce que le Melic des Hormes veult. Encore a, cellui Melic, un
that which the Melik of-the Hormuz wishes Further has that Melik an
autre sien chasteau qui est aussi fort et plus que la cité de
other his castle which is also strong and more than the city of
Calatu, et mieux seigneury en l'entrée de cel golf de Calatu.
Kalhat and better lorded in the-entrance of that gulf of Kalhat

Les gens de celle contrée vivent de dathes et de
The people of that country live from dates and from
poisson salé; car il en ont en grant quantité, mais les
fish salted for they thereof have in great quantity but the
seigneurs menguent meilleurs viandes.
lords eat better foods

Autre chose n'y a qui à conter face. Si irons
Other thing not-there is which to tell may-make So we-will-go
avant, et vous dirons de la cité des Hormes dont
forward and to-you will-tell of the city of-the Hormuz of-which
autrefois vous ai conté ci arrieres.
another-time to-you I-have told here back

Cy devise de la cité des Hormes dont autrefois vous 192
Here describes of the city of-the Hormuz of-which another-time to-you
ai conté ci arrieres.
I-have told here back

Et quant l'en se part de la cité de Calatu et l'en va
And when one himself departs from the city of Kalhat and one goes
trois cenz milles entre maistre et tramontainne, si treuve l'en
three hundred miles between northwest and north so finds one
la cité des Hormes qui est grant cité et noble, et est sus la
the city of-the Hormuz which is great city and noble and is upon the
mer. Et ont Melic, qui veut dire Roy. Et est souz le soudan
sea And they-have Melik which wishes to-say King And it-is under the sultan
de Querman. Il ont pluseurs citez et chasteaux; et sont
of Kerman They have several cities and castles and are
Sarrazins. Et si y a moult grant chaleur; si que, pour ce, ont
Saracens And so there is very great heat so that for this have
il ordené leur maisons avec ventieres pour recueillir le vent,
they ordered their houses with ventilators for to-catch the wind
car il metent la venterie de la partie dont le vent vient; et
for they put the ventilator on the side from-which the wind comes and

font descendre le vent en leurs maisons pour estre plus fres; car
make descend the wind into their houses for to-be more cool for
autrement ne peussent durer, pour la grant chaleur qui y est.
otherwise not they-could endure for the great heat which there is

Autre chose ne vous conterai, pour ce que arrieres le vous
Other thing not to-you I-will-tell for this that back it to-you
avons conté ordenéement, et de ceste cité meismes de Curmos
we-have told orderly both of this city same of Hormuz
et de Querman aussi. Mais pour ce que nous alasmes par
and of Kerman also But for this that we went by
autres voies, si nous convient encore de retourner ci; mais
other ways so us it-behooves further to return here but
desoresmais nous en departirons, et nous vous conterons
henceforth we thence will-depart and we to-you will-tell
de la grant Turquie, si comme vous pourrez ouïr. Mais avant
of the great Turkey so as you will-be-able hear But first
vous dirai aucune chose que nous vous avons oublié à
to-you I-will-tell some thing which we to-you have forgotten to
conter. Sachiez que quant l'en se part de la cité de Calatu,
tell Know that when one himself departs from the city of Kalhat
et l'en va entre ponent et maistre .v. (cinq) cens milles,
and one goes between west and northwest five five hundred miles
adonc treuve l'en la cité de Quis, de laquelle nous ne vous
then finds one the city of Kish of which we not to-you
conterons pas ores, pour ce que nous passerons briefment
will-tell at-all now for this that we will-pass briefly
outre, pour retourner à nostre matiere de conter vous de la
beyond for to-return to our matter of telling you of the
grant Turquie; si comme vous pourrez entendre ci avant.
great Turkey so as you will-be-able understand here forward

In the great Turkey reigns Kaidu, nephew of the Khan and son of Chagatai, at war with his uncle because he demands his share of Cathay and Manzi but fears to come to court. He can field a hundred thousand horsemen, with barons of Genghis's line. In 1276 he and his cousin Yesudar defeated two of the Khan's nephews. Two years later he marched on Karakorum against the Khan's son Nomogan and King George of Prester John's line, sixty thousand on each side; each Tartar carried sixty arrows, light ones for distance and heavy ones for close fighting, and the battle lasted until evening with no victor. Next morning, hearing that the Khan was sending a host to his son's aid, Kaidu withdrew to Samarkand.

Cy devise de la grant Turquie. 193

Here describes of the great Turkey

En la grant Turquie a un roy qui est appellez Caidu.

In the great Turkey there-is a king who is called Kaidu

Et est neveu au grant Kaan; car il fu filz de Sigatay qui

And he-is nephew to-the great Khan for he was son of Chagatai who

fu frère charnel du grant Kaan. Il a maintes cités et

was brother carnal of-the great Khan He has many cities and

chasteaux, et est grant seigneur; et est aussi Tartar et ses

castles and is great lord and is also Tartar and his

gens; et sont bons hommes d'armes; car il sont touzjours en

people and are good men of-arms for they are always in

guerre. Et si vous di que ce roy Caïdu n'ot oncques paix

war And so to-you I-tell that this king Kaidu not-had ever peace

avec son oncle le grant Kaan; mais toutes fois grant guerre;

with his uncle the great Khan but all times great war

et a jà faites de grans batailles encontre l'ost du grant

and has already made of great battles against the-host of-the great

Kaan. Et la discorde que il ont ensemble, si est que Caïdu

Khan And the discord which they have together so is that Kaidu

demande au grand Kaan sa part de conquest que son pere
asks of-the great Khan his part of conquest which his father
fist, et que il devoit avoir. Et proprement demande part
made and which he ought to-have And especially he-asks part
de la province du Catay et du Manzi. Et le grant Kaan
of the province of-the Cathay and of-the Manzi And the great Khan
lui disoit que bien lui vouloit donner sa part; mais que
to-him said that well to-him he-wished to-give his part but that
toutefois l'envoiroit querre à sa court à ses conseus; que il
always it-he-would-send seek to his court to his councils that he
y venist comme ses liges homs. Et Caïdu qui ne se
there should-come as his liege man And Kaidu who not himself
fioit tant en son oncle, dist qu'il n'y iroit point; mais
trusted so-much in his uncle said that-he not-there would-go whit but
il li seroit bien obéissant là où il seroit à touz ses
he to-him would-be well obedient there where he would-be in all his
commandemens. Car il se doutoit pour ce que il s'etoit
commands For he himself feared for this that he himself-was
revelez pluseurs fois, que il ne le fist destruire. Si que,
rebelled several times that he — him should-have destroyed So that
pour ce, estoit la discorde entr'eus, dont il sourdi grant
for this was the discord between-them from-which there arose great
guerre; et en furent pluseurs grans batailles, de l'ost de
war and thereof were several great battles of the-host of
Caïdu roy à l'ost du grant Kaan son oncle. Et sachiez
Kaidu king with the-host of-the great Khan his uncle And know
que le grant Kaan tient tout l'an ses osts entour le regne
that the great Khan keeps all the-year his hosts around the realm
de ce Caïdu, à ce que il ne li face domage en sa terre.
of this Kaidu to this that he not to-him do damage in his land

Et il, pour tant, ne laisse que il n'entre en la terre du
And he for so-much not leaves that he enter into the land of-the
grant Kaan; et s'est combatu contre ses anemis.
great Khan and himself-has fought against his enemies

Le grant roy Caïdu, si a grant povoir, et il le puet bien
The great king Kaidu so has great power and he it can well
faire; car il puet bien mettre, en champ, ost de .c.m.
do for he can well put in field host of a-hundred-thousand
(cent mille) hommes à cheval, tous prudomes et bien usez de
hundred thousand men on horse all worthy-men and well used to
guerre. Et si a aussi avec lui pluseurs barons du lignage
war And so he-has also with him several barons of-the lineage
de l'empire: c'est de Chinguis Kaan, qui fu le premier qui ot
of the-empire this-is of Genghis Khan who was the first who had
seigneurie, et qui conquesta une grant partie du monde; si
lordship and who conquered a great part of-the world so
comme je vous ai conté ci arrieres apertement en ce livre.
as I to-you have told here back openly in this book

Et sachiez que ceste grant Turquie est vers maistre,
And know that this great Turkey is toward northwest
quant l'en se part des Hormes. Elle commence outre
when one himself departs from-the Hormuz It begins beyond
le flun de Jon, et dure vers tramontaine jusques ès
the river of Jon and lasts toward north as-far-as into-the
terre du grant Kaan.
land of-the great Khan

Or nous partirons de ci, et vous conterai d'aucunes
Now we will-depart from here and to-you I-will-tell of-some
batailles des gens du roy Caïdu, contre les osts du
battles of-the people of-the king Kaidu against the hosts of-the
grant Kaan, si comme vous pourrez oïr.
great Khan so as you will-be-able hear

194 Cy dit de pluseurs batailles que fist le roy Caïdu contre
Here tells of several battles which made the king Kaidu against
les osts du grant Kaan son oncle.
the hosts of-the great Khan his uncle
Or avint et fu voir que ou temps mil .cc.lxxvj.
Now it-happened and was true that in-the time thousand two-hundred-seventy-six
(deux cens soixante seize) ans de Crist et de sa incarnation,
two hundred sixty sixteen years of Christ and of his incarnation
que ce roy Caïdu, et un autre qui avoit nom Jesudar, qui estoit
that this king Kaidu and an other who had name Yesudar who was
son cousin, assemblerent une grant quantité de gent, et firent
his cousin assembled a great quantity of people and made
ost, et alerent sus deux barons du grant Kaan; et si estoient
host and went upon two barons of-the great Khan and so they-were
aussi ses neveus, car il furent filz de Sygatay qui fu crestiens
also his nephews for they were sons of Chagatai who was Christian
baptisiez, et fu frere charnel au grand Cublay Kaan. L'un
baptized and was brother carnal to-the great Kublai Khan The-one
avoit nom Cybaï, et l'autre Cyban. Et que vous diroie je?
had name Cibai and the-other Ciban And what to-you would-tell I
Caïdou atout son ost, qui bien furent .lx.m. (soixante
Kaidu with-all his host who fully were sixty-thousand sixty
mille) à cheval, se combati contre ces deux barons du
thousand on horse himself fought against these two barons of-the
grant Kaan, qui avoient aussi grant ost, de plus de .lx.m.
great Khan who had also great host of more than sixty-thousand
(soixante mille) hommes à cheval. Et y ot grant bataille.
sixty thousand men on horse And there was great battle
Mais en la fin furent desconfist cil dui barons; et orent la
But in the end were defeated those two barons and had the
victoire, Caïdu et ses gens. Et furent mort d'une part et
victory Kaidu and his people And were dead on-one part and

d'autre moult de gent. Mais les deux barons freres eschaperent
on-other many of people But the two barons brothers escaped
par force de bons chevaus. Et le roy Caïdu s'en
by force of good horses And the king Kaidu himself-thence
retorna à grant joie en sa terre; et demoura bien deux
returned with great joy into his land and remained fully two
ans en paix, qu'il ne fist nulle guerre au grant Kaan.
years in peace so-that-he not made any war on-the great Khan
[«Or avint que, à chief de deus anz, le roy Caïdu
Now it-happened that at end of two years the king Kaidu
assembla un grant ost, si que bien furent une grandissme
assembled a great host so that well they-were a very-great
gent d'hommes à cheval. Il savoit que, à Caracoron, estoit
people of-men on horse He knew that at Karakorum was
le filz au grant Kaan] qui avoit nom Nomagan. Et avec
the son of-the great Khan who had name Nomogan And with
lui estoit Jeorge qui estoit filz du filz Prestre Jehan. Et
him was George who was son of-the son (of-)Prester John And
ces deux barons avoient aussi moult grant gent à cheval.
these two barons had also very great people on horse
Et quant le roy Caïdu fu appareilliez, si se mist à la
And when the king Kaidu was made-ready so himself be-put to the
voie et issi de son regne. Et tant ala par ses journées,
way and issued from his realm And so-far he-went by his day-journeys
sans aventure trouver, que il fu pres à Caracoron, là
without adventure finding that he was near to Karakorum there
où le filz du grant Kaan, et le nouveau Prestre Jehan
where the son of-the great Khan and the new Prester John
estoient atout grant ost, qui l'atendoient. Car bien avoient
were with-all great host who him-awaited For well they-had
seu que Caïdu leur venoit sus atout grant gent. Si que
known that Kaidu to-them came upon with-all great people So that

il s'appareillierent comme vaillans hommes, et de riens ne
they themselves-made-ready as valiant men and in anything not
furent esbahiz, et avoient plus de .lx.m. (soixante mille)
were astonished and had more than sixty-thousand sixty thousand
hommes à cheval bien appareilliez. Et quant il sorent que
men on horse well made-ready And when they knew that
le roy Caïdu et sa gent leur estoient si près, si alerent à
the king Kaidu and his people to-them were so near so they-went to
l'encontre vaillamment. Et furent près au roy Caïdu entour
the-encounter valiantly And they-were near to-the king Kaidu about
dix milles; et illec mistrent leur tentes et firent leur champ.
ten miles and there put their tents and made their camp
Leurs ennemis qui bien estoient plus, d'autre part, .lx.m.
Their enemies who fully were more on-other part sixty-thousand
(soixante mille) hommes à cheval, s'appareillierent. Et quant
sixty thousand men on horse themselves-made-ready And when
il furent bien appareilliez et d'une part et d'autre, si fist
they were well made-ready both on-one part and on-other so made
chascun six eschielles de son ost. Il estoient chascun, et
each six ranks of his host They were each both
d'une part et d'autre, bien appareilliez d'armes, d'espées, de
on-one part and on-other well equipped with-arms with-swords with
maces et d'escus, et d'ars, et de saiettes, et d'autres
maces and with-shields and with-bows and with arrows and with-other
armes à leur maniere. Et sachiez que les Tartars ont tel
arms in their manner And know that the Tartars have such
usage que quant il vont en ost, si portent chascun un arc
usage that when they go on host so carry each a bow
et .lx. (soixante) saiettes; les .xxx. (trente) sont soutilz à
and sixty sixty arrows the thirty thirty are slender with
petiz fers aigus, qui sont pour passer et pour chacier de
small heads sharp which are for to-pierce and for to-shoot from

loins; et les autres .xxx. (trente) grosses et à grans fers
far and the other thirty thirty thick and with great heads
et larges, que il gietent quant il sont de près; qu'il
and wide which they throw when they are of near so-that-they
taillent les chieres et les bras, et les cordes des ars, et
cut the faces and the arms and the strings of-the bows and
s'entrefont grant domage. Et ce font il par commandement
each-other-do great damage And this do they by command
chascun. Et puis ont les masses et les espées et les
each And then have the maces and the swords and the
lances, de quoi il s'entrefont grant domages aussi.
lances with which they each-other-do great damages also

Et quant il furent andeus bien appareilliez, il
And when they were both well made-ready they
commencierent les nacaires à sonner grandement, de
began the kettledrums to sound greatly from
chascune part un; car tel est leur usage, que nul ost
each part one for such is their usage that any host
n'assembleroit jusques atant que le grant nacaire sonne.
not-would-join until such-time that the great kettledrum sound
Et quant les nacaires commencierent à sonner, si commença
And when the kettledrums began to sound so began
adonc la bataille moult grant, moult aspre, et moult fiere;
then the battle very great very harsh and very fierce
et couroient felonnessement les uns sus les autres. Si que
and ran fiercely the ones upon the others So that
il en morut tant, et d'une part et d'autre, que de male
it thereof died so-many both on-one part and on-other that in evil
eure fu celle bataille commenciée, pour chascune des deux
hour was that battle begun for each of-the two
parties; car la terre estoit toute couverte de gens mors et
parties for the earth was all covered with men dead and

de navrés, et de chevaus aussi. Si y avoit si grant cri
with wounded and with horses also So there was so great cry
et si grant tempeste que l'en n'y oïst pas Dieu tonnant.
and so great tempest that one not-there heard at-all God thundering
Et sans faille, le roy Caïdu y fist moult proesces de son
And without fail the king Kaidu there did many prowesses of his
corps, et moult confortoit sa gent. Et d'autre part aussi
body and much comforted his people And on-other part also
le fils du grant Kaan et le neveu de Prestre Jehan ne
the son of-the great Khan and the nephew of Prester John not
firent pas mains de lui. Car il se prouverent moult
did at-all less than him For they themselves proved very
vaillamment ès grans presses, et faisoient tant d'armes,
valiantly in-the great presses and did so-many of-arms
et si bien conseilloient leur genz, que c'estoit une merveilles.
and so well counseled their people that it-was a marvels
Et que vous en diroie je? Sachiez que celle bataille
And what you thereof would-tell I Know that that battle
dura tant qu'elle fu une des plus aspres qui oncques fust
lasted so-much that-it was one of-the most harsh which ever was
entre Tartars. Et moult s'efforçoit, chacune des deux parties,
between Tartars And much strove each of-the two parties
de metre l'une l'autre à desconfiture. Mais tout ce ne valoit
to put the-one the-other to defeat But all this not availed
riens; et dura ainsi la bataille jusque au vespre que l'une
anything and lasted thus the battle until to-the evening so-that the-one
ne l'autre ne pot aler à desconfiture. Mais tout ce ne valoit
nor the-other not could go to defeat But all this not availed
rien; ne nulz ne savoit laquelle partie en avoit la meilleur.
anything nor anyone not knew which party thereof had the better

Et quant la bataille ot tant duré que le soleil aloit
And when the battle had so-long lasted that the sun went
à declin, si s'en parti chascun, et ala à son champ,
to decline so himself-thence departed each and went to his camp
à leur tentes. Ceus qui estoient demourez sains, si las et
to their tents Those who were remained healthy so weary and
si travailliez estoient, que il n'en y avoit nul qui se
so toiled they-were that it not-thereof there was any who himself
peust aidier. Et les navrés dont il en y avoit assez
could help And the wounded of-which it thereof there were plenty
d'une part et d'autre, chascun se plaignoit selonc son
on-one part and on-other each himself lamented according-to his
mal. Si que chascun avoit plus grant mestier de reposer que
ill So that each had more great need of resting than
de combattre. Et se reposa chascun moult volentiers la
of fighting And himself rested each very willingly the
nuit. Et quand le matin fu venuz, le roy Caïdu, qui avoit
night And when the morning was come the king Kaidu who had
oy nouvelles, par ses espies, que le grant Kaan envoyoit
heard news by his spies that the great Khan sent
un grant ost en l'aide de son filz, si se pensa à soi
a great host in the-aid of his son so himself he-thought to himself
meisme que il feroit mal de demourer; et fist armer son
same that he would-do ill to remain and had armed his
ost, et monterent à cheval à l'aube du jour; et se
host and they-mounted on horse at the-dawn of-the day and themselves
mistrent à la voie, pour retourner en leur contrée. Et quant
put to the way for to-return into their country And when
le filz du grant Kaan, et le neveu du Prestre Jehan virent
the son of-the great Khan and the nephew of-the Prester John saw
que le roy Caïdu s'en aloit atout son ost, si l'en
that the king Kaidu himself-thence went with-all his host so him-thence

laissierent aler, et ne leur alerent pas derriere, pour ce
they-let go and not after-them went at-all behind for this
qu'il estoient trop travailliéz aussi; et se reposerent
that-they were too toiled also and themselves rested
moult volentiers. Et le roy Caïdu chevaucha tant atout son
very willingly And the king Kaidu rode so-far with-all his
ost, par ses journées, sans arrester en nulle part, que il
host by his day-journeys without stopping in any part that they
vinrent en leur regne; ce est la grant Turquie, à Samarcand;
came into their realm this is the great Turkey at Samarkand
et illec demoura lontemps en paix sans nulle guerre.
and there remained long in peace without any war

XLI · KAIDU'S DAUGHTER

The great Khan, angry at the harm Kaidu did his land, spared him only because he was his own flesh and blood of the imperial line. Kaidu's daughter Aigiaruc, the Shining Moon, was so strong that no man could overcome her, and she would marry only one who threw her, each suitor staking a hundred horses; she had won ten thousand. A king's son came staking a thousand, and though her parents begged her to let him win, she threw him in the palace and he went home in shame. After that she rode with her father to war and carried off enemies like birds.

195 Ce que le grant Kaan dist du damage que Caïdu son
That which the great Khan said of-the damage which Kaidu his
neveu li fait.
nephew to-him does

Sachiez que le grant Kaan avoit grant ire de ce que
Know that the great Khan had great anger of this that
Caïdu son neveu li doumageoit sa gent et sa terre; et
Kaidu his nephew to-him damaged his people and his land and

dist que, ce ne fust ce que il est de sa char, et son neveu,
said that this not were this that he is of his flesh and his nephew
et de son sanc de l'emperial ligniée; si que pour ce sa
and of his blood of the-imperial line so that for this his
char le destraignoit, que, en toutes manieres il le feroit
flesh him constrained that in all manners he him would-have
destruire, et lui et sa terre, se lui meisme deust aler sus
destroyed both him and his land if he same should go upon
lui. Car sachiez que se il eust voulu, il ne peust eschaper
him For know that if he had wished he not could escape
des mains son oncle le grant Kaan; mais il le laissoit
from-the hands (of-)his uncle the great Khan but he him left
pour l'achoison de parenté. Si que en ceste maniere eschappa
for the-occasion of kinship So that in this manner escaped
le roy Caïdu des mains au grand Kaan son oncle.
the king Kaidu from-the hands of-the great Khan his uncle

Or vous lairons à conter de ceste mateire. Si vous
Now you we-will-leave to tell of this matter So to-you
dirai ci avant grant merveille de force que faisoit une
I-will-tell here forward great marvel of strength which did a
fille, que avoit le roy Caïdu.
daughter which had the king Kaidu

Cy devise de la force à la fille au roi Caïdu, et de 196
Here describes of the strength of the daughter of-the king Kaidu and of
sa vaillance.
her valor

Or sachiez que le roy Caïdu avoit une siene fille qui
Now know that the king Kaidu had a his daughter who
avoit nom Agiaint, en tatarais, qui vaut à dire: «luisant
had name Aigiaruc in Tartar which is-worth to say shining
lune». Ceste damoiselle estoit si belle, si fort et si preux
moon This damsel was so fair so strong and so valiant

que, en tout le royaume son pere, ne trouvoit-on homme
that in all the kingdom (of-)her father not found-one man
qui la peust vaincre de force. Mais vous di que à toutes
who her could overcome by strength But to-you I-tell that in all
preuves faisoit plus grant force que nul autre homme.
proofs she-did more great strength than any other man

Son pere la vouloit pluseurs fois marier; mais elle ne le
Her father her wished several times to-marry but she not it
vouloit. Ains disoit que elle ne se mariroit jamais jusques
wished But she-said that she not herself would-marry ever-more until
adonc qu'elle trouvast aucun homme qui la vainquist de toutes
then that-she found some man who her overcame in all
preuves; et à celui se mariroit elle. Et son pere, puis qu'il
proofs and to that-one herself would-marry she And her father since that-he
sot sa volenté, si li previlege à leur usage, que elle se
knew her will so to-her privilege at their usage that she herself
peust marier à qui qu'elle vousist, et quant il li plairoit.
might marry to whom that-she might-wish and when it to-her would-please
Elle estoit si grant et si corsue, et si grosse et bien taillie,
She was so tall and so big-bodied and so thick and well shaped
qu'elle ressambloit poi mains d'une jaiande. Elle avoit envoié
that-she resembled little less than-a giantess She had sent
ses lettres par chascune terre, que quiconques se voudroit
her letters through each land that whoever himself would-wish
venir esprouver contre elle, si venist par tel convenance
to-come prove against her so he-should-come on such covenant
que, se elle le vainquist, qu'elle gaaingnast .c. (cent)
that if she him overcame that-she should-win a-hundred hundred
chevaux; et se il la vainquist qu'il l'auroit à femme. Si que
horses and if he her overcame that-he her-would-have to wife So that
pluseurs filz de gentilz hommes y estoient venuz esprouver
several sons of noble men there were come prove-themselves

en encontre elle, et elle les vainquit touz; si qu'elle avoit tant
in against her and she them overcame all so that-she had so-much
gaaingnié qu'elle avoit plus de .x.m. (dix mille) chevaus.
won that-she had more than ten-thousand ten thousand horses

Or avint que ou temps .m.cc.iiij. (mil deux
Now it-happened that in-the time a-thousand-two-hundred-four thousand two
cents quatre) vins ans de Crist, il vint un gentil vallet, filz
hundred four score years of Christ there came a noble youth son
d'un riche roy, et puissant, lequel estoit preuz et vaillant et
of-a rich king and powerful who was valiant and brave and
moult fort; et avoit oy parler de l'espreuve à ceste damoiselle.
very strong and had heard speak of the-proof of this damsel
Si que il s'estoit venuz esprouver encontre elle; que se il
So that he himself-was come prove against her so-that if he
la vainquist, qu'il la peust avoir à femme, si comme estoient
her overcame that-he her might have to wife so as were
les convenances, et il en avoit moult grant talent d'avoir
the covenants and he thereof had very great desire of-having
la; car elle estoit moult belle damoiselle de grant maniere, et
her for she was very fair damsel of great manner and
il estoit moult biaus et jeunes et preuz et fort de toutes
he was very fair and young and valiant and strong of all
forces; car il ne trouvoit homme ou royaume son pere qui
strengths for he not found man in-the kingdom (of-)his father who
peust durer contre lui de nulle force; si que, pour ce, estoit
could last against him in any strength so that for this was
il venuz hardiement, et avoit amené mille chevaus, que se
he come boldly and had brought thousand horses so-that if
il fust vainqus, qu'elle peust avoir tretouz les mille chevaus
he were overcome that-she might have all-together the thousand horses
ensemble. Si que ce feust une moult grant gaaingne de mille
together So that this would-be a very great gain of thousand

chevaus à un coup. Mais le vallet se fioit tant en sa
horses at one blow But the youth himself trusted so-much in his
force que il la cuidoit gaaingnier de venue. Et sachiez que le
strength that he her thought to-win at coming And know that the
roy Caïdu et sa femme la royne, mere de la forte damoiselle,
king Kaidu and his wife the queen mother of the strong damsel
si prièrent à leur fille privéement, qu'elle se laissast
so prayed to their daughter privily that-she herself should-let
vaincre en toutes manières; car il seroient moult liez s'il
overcome in all manners for they would-be very glad if-he
avoit leur fille à femme; pour ce qu'il estoit gentilz homs,
had their daughter to wife for this that-he was noble man
et filz à un grant roy. Mais la damoiselle leur respondi que
and son of a great king But the damsel to-them answered that
en nulle maniere elle ne se laisseroit vaincre à son povoir;
in any manner she not herself would-let overcome to her power
mais, se il la vainquoit par force, elle vouloit bien estre sa
but if he her overcame by force she wished well to-be his
femme, si comme les convenances estoient; et autrement non.
wife so as the covenants were and otherwise not

Or avint qu'à un jour nommé s'assemblèrent toute la
Now it-happened that-on a day named themselves-assembled all the
gent ou palais le roy Caïdu. Et y fu le roy et la
people in-the palace (of-)the king Kaidu And there was the king and the
royne. Et quant toute la gent fu assemblée, dont il y
queen And when all the people was assembled of-which it there
avoit assez pour veoir celle luite; si issi la damoiselle
were plenty for to-see that wrestling so came-forth the damsel
avant, en une cote estroite de samit; et puis vint, le vallet,
forward in a tunic close of samite and then came the youth
après, en une cote de cendal et estoit moult belle chose à
after in a tunic of sendal and it-was very fine thing to

veoir. Et quant il furent touz deus ou palais si prirent
see And when they were all two in-the palace so they-took
l'un l'autre à bras, et s'entretindrent or çà, or là, et
the-one the-other by arm and each-other-held now here now there and
dura grant piece que l'un ne povoit abatre l'autre. Mais en
it-lasted great while that the-one not could throw-down the-other But in
la fin fu telle l'aventure que la damoiselle le geta souz lui
the end was such the-adventure that the damsel him threw under her
moult vaillamment. Et quant celui se vit geté dessouz elle,
very valiantly And when he himself saw thrown beneath her
si en ot moult grant honte et moult grant vergoingne;
so thereof he-had very great shame and very great disgrace
et ne fist autre chose, mais que sitost qu'il fu levez, il
and not did other thing but that as-soon-as he was risen he
s'en parti au plustost qu'il pot atout sa compaignie;
himself-thence departed at-the soonest that-he could with-all his company
et s'en retorna chies son pere, honteus et dolent de
and himself-thence returned to-the-house-of his father shamed and sorrowful of
ce qui li estoit avenu; que par une damoiselle avoit esté
this which to-him was befallen that by a damsel he-had been
vaincu, qui oncques ne pot trouver homme qui peust durer
overcome who ever not could find man who could last
à lui. Et laissa les mille chevaus qu'il avoit amenez.
against him And he-left the thousand horses which-he had brought

Du roy Caïdu vous di que il, et sa femme, furent
Of-the king Kaidu to-you I-tell that he and his wife were
moult courrouciez; car par leur vouloir, eust, le vallet,
very angered for by their will would-have the youth
gaaingnié leur fille, et le vousist chascun, qu'il l'eust eue
won their daughter and it wished each that-he her-had had
à femme, pour ce qu'il estoit tenu à riche homme; et,
to wife for this that-he was held for rich man and

avec ce, estoit moult biaus jeunes homs, fors et preus
with this was very fair young man strong and valiant
et plaisant. Or li avint celle mesaventure.
and pleasing Now to-him happened that mischance

Or vous ai conté de la fille le roy. Si sachiez
Now to-you I-have told of the daughter (of-)the king So know
que, depuis ce fait, n'aloit, son pere, en nul fait d'armes
that since this deed not-went her father into any deed of-arms
qu'elle n'alast avecques lui. Et il la menoit volentiers,
that-she not-should-go with him And he her led willingly
pour ce que il n'avoit chevalier avec lui qui tant feist
for this that he not-had knight with him who so-much did
d'armes comme elle faisoit. Et aucune foiz se partoit
of-arms as she did And some times herself she-departed
de l'ost son pere, et aloit en l'ost de ses ennemis, et
from the-host (of-)her father and went into the-host of his enemies and
prenoit un homme, par force, aussi legierement comme un
took a man by force as lightly as a
oisel, et l'aportoit à son pere; et ce faisoit elle toutes fois.
bird and him-brought to her father and this did she all times

Or vous lairons atant de ce fait. Si vous conterons d'une
Now you we-will-leave at-that of this deed So to-you we-will-tell of-a
grant bataille qui fu entre le roi Caïdu et Argon le filz Abaga,
great battle which was between the king Kaidu and Arghun the son (of-)Abaka
le sire du Levant des Tartars; si comme vous orrez ci avant.
the lord of-the East of-the Tartars so as you will-hear here forward

Abaka, lord of the East, sent his son Arghun to guard the border from the Dry Tree to the river Jon, and Kaidu sent his brother Barac against him. Arghun defeated Barac at the river, and Barac escaped on his good horse. Soon after, Arghun learned that Abaka was dead and set out on the forty days' road home, but his uncle Ahmad Sultan, who had become a Saracen, seized the lordship and its treasure, gave it all to the barons and men at arms to win them, and took his brother's wives for himself; then he raised a great host against Arghun.

Cy dist comment Abaga envoia son filz en ost contre le 197
Here tells how Abaka sent his son on host against the
roy Caïdu.
king Kaidu

Abaga, le seigneur du Levant, tenoit maintes provinces
Abaka the lord of-the East held many provinces
et terres qui joingnoient au roy Caïdu. Et c'estoit vers
and lands which bordered on-the king Kaidu And this-was toward
l'«Arbre Seul», que le livre Alixandre appelle Arbre sec,
the-Tree Solitary which the book (of-)Alexander calls Tree dry
duquel je vous ai conté ci arrieres. Et Abaga y envoia
of-which I to-you have told here back And Abaka there sent
son filz Argon pour ce qu'il ne receust domage de ses
his son Arghun for this that-he not should-receive damage from his
hommes, et grant quantité de genz à cheval, de l'«Arbre
men and great quantity of people on horse from the-Tree
sec» jusques au flun de Jon. Et illec demouroit Argon
dry as-far-as to-the river of Jon And there dwelt Arghun
atout son ost. Or avint que le roy Caïdu assembla grant
with-all his host Now it-happened that the king Kaidu assembled great
quantité de gens, et en fist chevetaine un sien frere
quantity of people and thereof made captain a his brother

qu'en appeloit Barac qui moult estoit preudoms et sages. Et
whom-one called Barac who very was worthy-man and wise And
envoia son ost avec son frere pour combatre contre Argon.
he-sent his host with his brother for to-fight against Arghun
Barac se parti atout son ost et tant erra qu'il
Barac himself departed with-all his host and so-far wandered that-he
vint jusques au flun de Jon; et furent près d'Argon a .x.
came as-far-as to-the river of Jon and were near of-Arghun at ten
(dix) milles. Quant Argon sot que Barac venoit sus lui, si
ten miles When Arghun knew that Barac came upon him so
s'appareilla moult bien et vint à l'encontre, atout son
himself-he-made-ready very well and came to the-encounter with-all his
ost, en un champ où il mist ses tentes. Et que vous en
host into a field where he put his tents And what you thereof
diroie-je? Quant il furent bien appareilliez et d'une part
would-tell-I When they were well made-ready both on-one part
et d'autre, si commencierent à sonner les grans nacaires, et
and on-other so they-began to sound the great kettledrums and
de maintenant commença la bataille des uns aus autres,
from at-once began the battle of-the ones against-the others
et s'entregetèrent tant de saietes que tout l'air en estoit
and each-other-shot so-many of arrows that all the-air thereof was
couvers comme de pluie. Et tant y avoit là mors,
covered as with rain And so-many there were there dead
d'hommes et de chevaus, d'une part et d'autre, que toute
of-men and of horses on-one part and on-other that all
la terre en estoit couverte. Et tant dura la bataille que les
the earth thereof was covered And so-long lasted the battle that the
gens Barac furent desconfiz des genz Argon. Et passerent le
people (of-)Barac were defeated by-the people (of-)Arghun And they-crossed the
flun. Mais Argon et ses genz les occioient et malmenoient en
river But Arghun and his people them killed and mishandled in

fuiant tout à leur volenté. Si que en ceste maniere ala, ceste
fleeing all at their will So that in this manner went this
bataille, que Argon ot la victoire, et Barac fu desconfiz; et
battle that Arghun had the victory and Barac was defeated and
eschapa par la force de son bon cheval qui tost l'emporta.
escaped by the strength of his good horse which quickly him-carried-off

Et depuis que je vous ai commencié d'Argon, si vous
And since that I to-you have begun of-Arghun so you
lairons de Caïdu et de Barac son frere et vous conterons
we-will-leave of Kaidu and of Barac his brother and to-you will-tell
huimès d'Argon; comment il fist puis, et comment il
henceforth of-Arghun how he did afterward and how he
fu seigneur puis la mort son pere.
was lord after the death (of-)his father

Comment Argon sot que son pere estoit mort puis la 198
How Arghun knew that his father was dead after the
bataille, et se parti pour aler prendre la seignorie, si
battle and himself departed for to-go take the lordship so
comme raison estoit.
as reason was

Quant Argon ot vaincu celle bataille de Barac le frere
When Arghun had won that battle of Barac the brother
Caïdu, et de son ost, si ne demoura pas grandement que
(of-)Kaidu and of his host so not he-remained at-all long that
il oï nouvelles que Abaga son pere estoit mors, de quoi
he heard news that Abaka his father was dead of which
il ot grant duel. Si s'appareilla atout son ost, et se
he had great grief So himself-he-made-ready with-all his host and himself
mist au retour pour avoir la seignourie, si comme il devoit;
put on-the return for to-have the lordship so as he ought
mais il avoit à aler .xl. (quarante) journées, ains qu'il y
but he had to go forty forty day-journeys before that-he there

fust. Or avint qu'il avoit un sien oncle qui avoit nom
were Now it-happened that-he had a his uncle who had name
Acomat Soldan, car il estoit devenuz sarrazins. Quant il sot
Ahmad Sultan for he was become Saracen When he knew
que Abaga son frere estoit mort, et que Argon son neveu
that Abaka his brother was dead and that Arghun his nephew
estoit si loins, si pensa que il pourroit bien estre seigneur.
was so far so he-thought that he could well be lord
Si s'appareilla atout grant gent, et s'en vint à la
So himself-he-made-ready with-all great people and himself-thence came to the
court Abaga son frere et print la seigneurie; et se fist
court (of-)Abaka his brother and took the lordship and himself made
seigneur, et trouva si grant tresor que ce fu merveilles. Et,
lord and found so great treasure that it was marvels And
comme malicieus, le departi tout aus barons, et aus gens
as malicious it divided all to-the barons and to-the people
d'armes, pour avoir leurs cuers et leurs graces. Et quant
of-arms for to-have their hearts and their graces And when
ses barons et ses genz d'armes virent que il avoient tant
his barons and his people of-arms saw that they had so-much
eu de lui, et disoit chascun que il estoit bons sires. Et
had from him and said each that he was good lord And
l'amoient et disoient que il ne voloient autre seigneur que
him-loved and said that they not wished other lord than
li. Mais il fist puis une mauvese chose qui moult fu
him But he did afterward an evil thing which much was
reprise de chascun. Car il print toutes les fames son frere
blamed by each For he took all the wives (of-)his brother
Abaga, et les retint puis toutes por soi.
Abaka and them kept afterward all for himself

Quant il ot la seigneurie, et ne demoura pas gramment
When he had the lordship and not remained at-all long
que il oï nouvelles comment Argon son neveu venoit atout
that he heard news how Arghun his nephew came with-all
grant ost, si ne fist nulle demeure; mais de maintenant fist
great host so not he-made any delay but from at-once he-had
mander ses barons et toute sa gent, et fist en une semaine
summoned his barons and all his people and had in a week
appareillier moult grant ost de genz à cheval, pour aler encontre
made-ready very great host of people on horse for to-go against
Argon. Et y aloit moult volentiers, si comme celui qui cuidoit
Arghun And there he-went very willingly so as he who thought
la bataille gaaingnier; et ne se monstroit de riens esbahis.
the battle to-win and not himself showed in anything astonished

Ahmad Sultan marches with sixty thousand horsemen and pitches his tents on a fair plain to await Arghun. He tells his barons that the lordship is his by right, as Abaka's brother who helped win the lands, and that he wants only the honor while they will have the profit; they swear to stand by him and deliver Arghun dead or alive. Arghun, learning that Ahmad awaits him, is angry but shows no fear, so as to hearten his men. Here the French court redaction breaks off, unfinished.

199 Comment Acomat Soldan se departi atout son ost pour
How Ahmad Sultan himself departed with-all his host for
aler contre son neveu qui venoit prendre la seignorie si
to-go against his nephew who came to-take the lordship so
comme droiz estoit.
as right was

Et quant Acomat Soldan ot appareillié bien .lx.m.
And when Ahmad Sultan had made-ready fully sixty-thousand
(soixante mille) hommes à cheval, si se mist à la voie,
sixty thousand men on horse so himself he-put to the way
et chevauchierent bien .x. (dix) journées et orent nouvelles
and they-rode fully ten ten day-journeys and had news
comment leur anemis estoient près d'eus, et avoient bien
how their enemies were near of-them and had fully
autant de genz comme il avoient. Si fist, Acomat, tendre ses
as-many of people as they had So had Ahmad pitch his
paveillons en un moult biau plain et moult grant. Et illec
pavilions in a very fair plain and very great And there
fist atendre Argon pour combatre à lui. Quant il ot son
he-had await Arghun for to-fight with him When he had his
fait appareillié, si fist assembler ses barons et ses chevaliers,
affair made-ready so he-had assembled his barons and his knights
et les genz d'armes, pour estre au parlement avec eus;
and the people of-arms for to-be in-the parley with them

car il, comme malicieus hom, vouloit savoir le cuer et la
for he as malicious man wished to-know the heart and the
volenté de chascun; et commença à parler en tel maniere:
will of each and began to speak in such manner

«Seignors, dist il, vous savez bien comment je doi estre
Lords said he you know well how I must be
seigneur par raison de tout ce que Abaga, mon frere, tenoit,
lord by reason of all that which Abaka my brother held
pour ce que je sui filz de celui pere de cui il fu filz; et pour
for this that I am son of that father of whom he was son and for
ce que j'ai esté toutes foiz avec lui à aidier à conquester les
this that I-have been all times with him at helping to conquer the
terres et les provinces que nous tenons. Bien est voir que
lands and the provinces which we hold Well is true that
Argon, le filz Abaga, mon frere, se aucun vouloit dire que à
Arghun the son (of-)Abaka my brother if anyone wished to-say that to
lui deust venir la seigneurie, je diroie, sauve la garde et la
him should come the lordship I would-say save the keeping and the
grace de touz ceus qui le vouroient dire que à lui deust venir
grace of all those who it would-wish say that to him should come
la seigneurie, que ne seroit pas raison ne digne chose; pour
the lordship that not would-be at-all reason nor worthy thing for
ce que son pere tint le regne tant, comme vous savez, toute
this that his father held the realm so-long as you know all
sa vie, si est raison aussi que je la doie avoir toute ma vie,
his life so is reason also that I it should have all my life
depuis sa mort. Et ores puis qu'il est ainssi comme je vous
since his death And now since that-it is thus as I to-you
ai dit, je vous pri que nous deffendons notre droit, et que
have said I you pray that we defend our right and that
le regne et la seigneurie remaingne à nous touz ensemble;
the realm and the lordship remain to us all together

que je vous di que je en vueil avoir l'onneur seulement
for I to-you tell that I thereof wish to-have the-honor only
et la renommée, et, vous, en aurez le proufit et l'onneur
and the renown and you thereof will-have the profit and the-honor
et l'avoir, et la seigneurie par toutes nos provinces et
and the-wealth and the lordship through all our provinces and
terres. Autre chose ne vous dirai; car je sais bien que
lands Other thing not to-you I-will-tell for I know well that
vous estez sages et preus; et que vous amez droit; et que
you are wise and valiant and that you love right and that
ferez chose que, à touz, nous sera honneur et bien.»
you-will-do thing which to all us will-be honor and good

Si se test atant, et ne dit plus. Et quant il orent
So himself he-was-silent at-that and not said more And when they had
tuit ce entendu, si respondirent tuit communement que il
all this heard so they-answered all commonly that they
ne li faudront jamès, tant qu'il aient la vie ou cors;
not to-him will-fail ever-more as-long-as they have the life in-the body
et qu'il li aideront contre touz les hommes du monde,
and that-they to-him will-aid against all the men of-the world
et contre Argon proprement; et qu'il n'ait jà doutance;
and against Arghun especially and that-he not-have ever fear
que il convient que il prengnent Argon mort ou vif. Et
for it behooves that they take Arghun dead or alive And
li rendront en ses mains. En tel maniere, comme vous
to-him will-render-him into his hands In such manner as you
oï avez, parla Acomat à ses hommes, et sot leur volentez.
heard have spoke Ahmad to his men and knew their wills

Or vous lairons de Acomat et de son ost; et vous
Now you we-will-leave of Ahmad and of his host and to-you
dirons de Argon et de son ost.
will-tell of Arghun and of his host

Comment Argon se conseille à sa gent pour aler 200
How Arghun himself counsels with his people for to-go
combattre contre Acomat Soldan son oncle qui li avoit
fight against Ahmad Sultan his uncle who from-him had
prinse sa seigneurie.
taken his lordship

Sachiez que quant Argon sot certainement que Acomat
Know that when Arghun knew certainly that Ahmad
l'atendoit ou champ avec moult gent, si en ot moult
him-awaited in-the field with much people so thereof he-had very
grant ire. Mais toutefoiz ne s'esbahi pas, porce qu'il
great anger But nevertheless not himself-dismayed at-all because that-he
ne vouloit pas monstrer à ses hommes qu'il eust paour;
not wished at-all show to his men that-he had fear
car il li pourroit trop nuire. Mais n'en fist nul
for it to-him could too-much harm But not-thereof he-made any
semblant; ains monstroit que il ne les doutoit de riens,
semblance but showed that he not them feared in anything
pour conforter sa gent, si comme sages hons qu'il estoit.
for to-comfort his people so as wise man that-he was